MY19 BK Astra

Owner's Manual

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232, Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing rework action required on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

GM Holden Ltd (Holden) is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia.
Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.
You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: holdencustomercare@gm.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92510154
September 2018
(MY19 BK Astra. Print 1-O)

© 2018 GM Holden Ltd.
© 2018 Holden New Zealand Ltd.
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited without written approval from GM Holden Ltd., ABN 84 006 893 232 (Australia) or Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

Contents

Introduction 2
In Brief 5
Keys, Doors, and Windows 21
Seats and Restraints 48
Storage 71
Instruments and Controls 80
Lighting 112
Infotainment System 123
Climate Controls 212
Driving and Operating 222
Vehicle Care 286
Service and Maintenance 337
Technical Data 339
Customer Information 348
Index 352

Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current BK Astra vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant.**
- The In Brief section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- For a complete list of the registered trademarks contained in this manual *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *348*

Danger, Warning, and Caution

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨.

This indicates 'see page'.

✍ NOTES

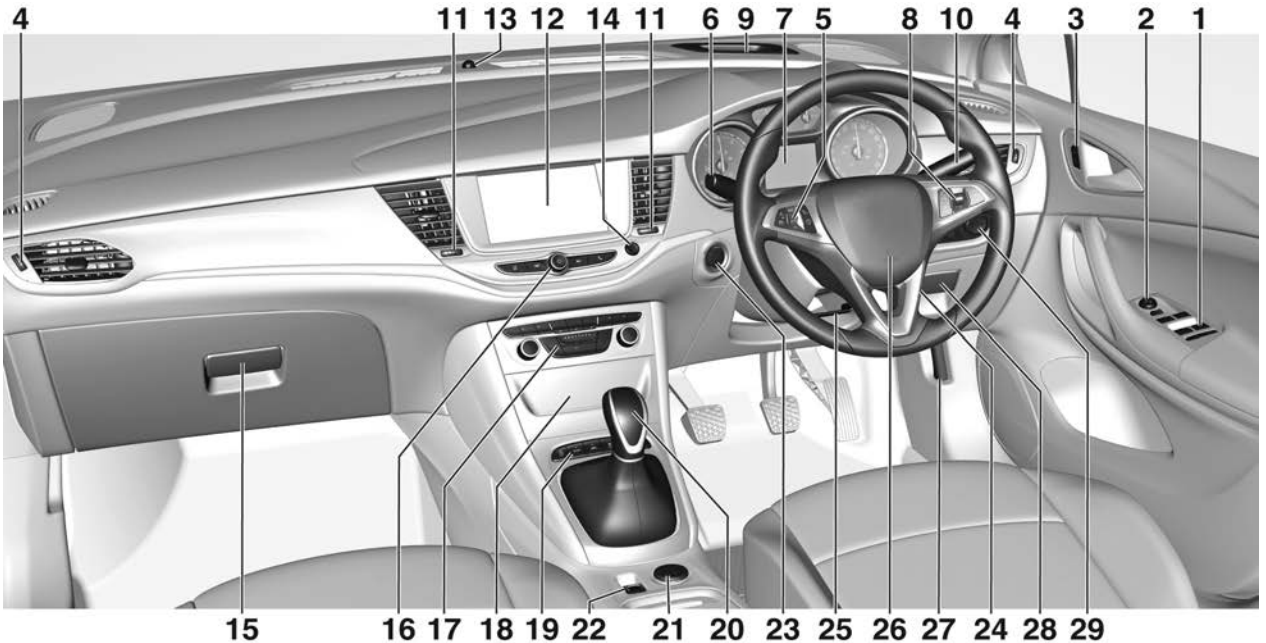
In Brief

Instrument Panel
Instrument Panel Overview 6

Initial Drive Information
Initial Drive Information 8
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 8
Remote Start 9
Seat Adjustment 9
Head Restraint Adjustment 11
Seat Belts 11
Mirror Adjustment 11
Steering Wheel Adjustment 12
Exterior Lighting 12
Horn 14
Washer and Wiper Systems . . . 14
Climate Controls 15
Transmission 16
Parking 17
Getting Started 18

Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview



1. *Power Windows* ⇨ *44*.
2. *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.
3. *Door Locks* ⇨ *28*.
4. Side air vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ *220*.
5. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *256*.

   Speed Limiter ⇨ *258*.

   Adaptive Cruise Control ⇨ *260*.

   Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *268*.
6. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *83*.
7. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *88*.

   Driver Information Centre (DIC) ⇨ *101*.
8. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *81*.
9. Forward collision alert indicator. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *268*.
10. Turn signal lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *118*.

    Low/high beam. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *112*.

    Buttons for the driver information centre. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *101*.
11. Centre air vents. See *Adjustable Air Vents* ⇨ *220*.
12. Infotainment display. See *Overview* ⇨ *126* or *154*.
13. Light sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *113*.

    Theft deterrent system status LED. See *Anti-theft Alarm System* ⇨ *39*.
14. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *117*.
15. Glovebox. See *Storage Compartments* ⇨ *71*.
16. Infotainment controls. See *Introduction* ⇨ *124* or *153*.
17. *Air Conditioning System* ⇨ *212* or *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ *214*.
18. Fuse box. See *Fuses* ⇨ *312*.
19. *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *241*.

    Electronic Stability Control (ESC) ⇨ *242*.

    Sport Mode ⇨ *244*.

    Parking Assist ⇨ *247*.

    Advanced Parking Assist ⇨ *252*.

    Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ⇨ *276*.

    Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature ⇨ *228*.
20. Shift lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *233*.

    Shift lever. See *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *237*.
21. 12V power outlet. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *87*.
22. Parking brake. See *Parking Brake* ⇨ *239*.

    Electric Parking Brake ⇨ *239*.
23. Engine Start/Stop button. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *224*.
24. Ignition switch. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *224*.
25. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *81*.

26. *Horn* ⇨ *82*.
27. Bonnet release. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *289*.
28. *Storage Compartments* ⇨ *71*.
29. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *112*.

    Rear Fog Lights ⇨ *118*.

    Headlamp Leveling Control ⇨ *117*.

    Instrument Panel Illumination Control ⇨ *119*.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may be fitted to your vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner's manual.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Type 1

Type 2

Two RKE transmitters are supplied with the vehicle. Depending on vehicle model, different functions may be available.

Press to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door. Open the doors by pulling the handles.

To open the tailgate, push the touchpad beneath the brand emblem (Hatchback) or touchpad under the tailgate moulding (Sport wagon) and open the tailgate.

Press to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *22*, *Door Locks* ⇨ *28*, *Tailgate* ⇨ *33*.

Remote Start

Remote vehicle start allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

The remote vehicle start button is on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote vehicle start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing step 2, press and hold for at least four seconds or until the hazard warning lights flash.

   The hazard warning lights flashing confirms the request to start the vehicle remotely has been received.

   The engine starts, the doors will remain locked and the climate control system may come on.

   The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. The remote vehicle start can be extended.
4. To enter the vehicle, unlock the doors.
5. If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle: Press the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button before moving the shift lever out of **P**.
6. If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle: Start the engine normally. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *226*.

See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *27*.

Seat Adjustment

Longitudinal Adjustment

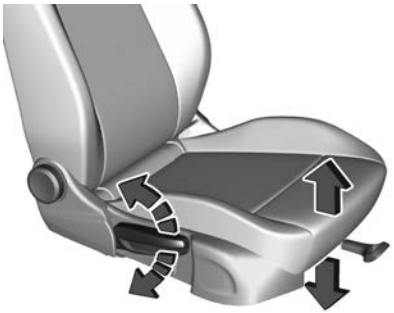
Lift the handle, slide the seat to the desired position then release the handle.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

Backrest Inclination

Turn the hand-wheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat Height



Move the lever in a pumping motion:

Up : seat higher

Down : seat lower

Lumbar Support

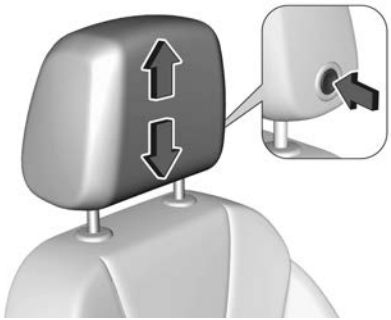
Adjust the lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

To move the support up and down: push switch up or down.

To increase and decrease support: push switch forwards or backwards.

See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *51*.

Head Restraint Adjustment



Press the release button, adjust the height and engage.

See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *48*.

Seat Belts

Pull the metal tongue across your body and clip it into the buckle.

The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips and fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

To unfasten, press the red button on the belt buckle.

See *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly* ⇨ *57*.

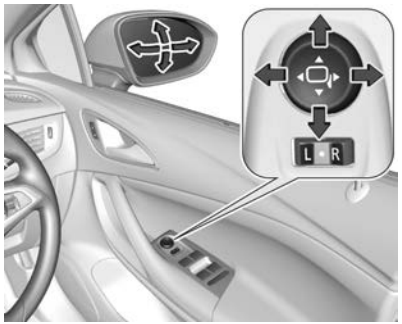
Mirror Adjustment

Interior Mirror

To adjust the mirror, move the mirror housing in the desired direction.

See *Manual Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *43*, *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *43*.

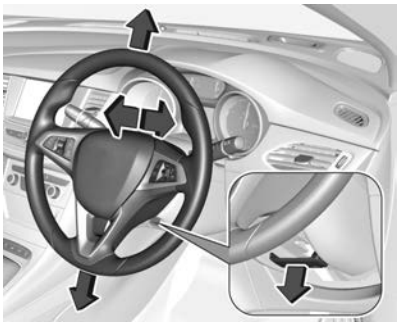
Exterior Mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing **L** or **R** for the left or right mirror. Press the control to adjust the selected mirror in the desired direction.

See *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment



Unlock the lever below the steering column. Adjust the steering wheel and then engage the lever. Ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *81*.

Exterior Lighting

Light Control Switch

Turn the light control switch:

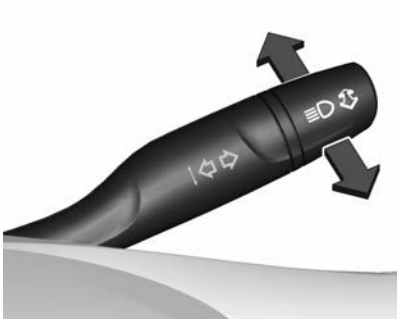
AUTO : Automatic light control, switches automatically between daytime running lights and headlights

: Park, tail and rear number plate lamps

: Headlamps and all park lamps

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *112*.

High and Low Beam, Headlamp Flash



Push the turn signal lever to change from low to high beam.

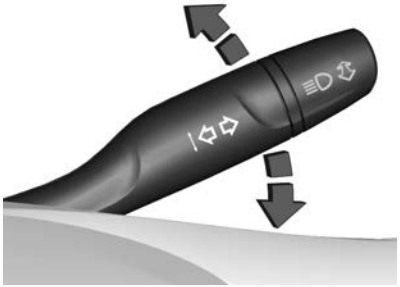
Pull the lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam is indicated by ≣● on the instrument cluster.

To activate the headlamp flash, pull the turn signal lever and release. The headlamps will remain on for as long as the lever is pulled.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *113*.

Turn Signals



Lever up : Left turn signal

Lever down : Right turn signal

See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *118*.

Hazard Warning Flashers

Operated by pressing ⚠.

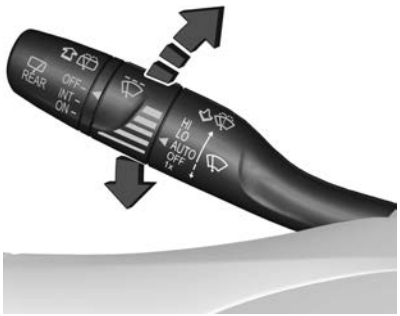
See *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *117*.

Horn

Press .

Washer and Wiper Systems

Windscreen Wiper



HI : fast

LO : slow

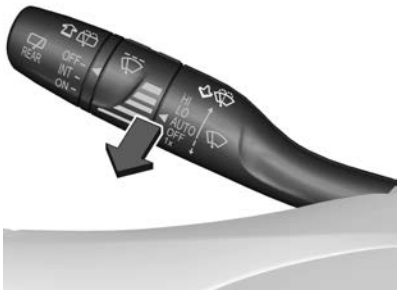
INT / AUTO : intermittent wiping or automatic wiping with rain sensor (if equipped)

OFF : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *83*.

Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *299*.

Rear Window Wiper

Turn the outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

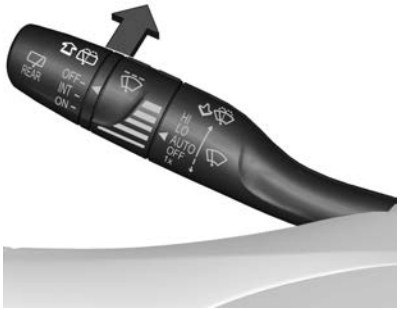
OFF : off

INT : intermittent operation

ON : continuous operation

See *Rear Window Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *85*

Rear Window Washer



Push the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *299*.

Climate Controls

Air Conditioning System

The following features are available:

- Control dial for temperature.
- Air distribution , , .
- : Fan speed.
- : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- **A/C** : Turns the air conditioning on or off.
- : Manual air recirculation.

- REAR : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors, if equipped.

See *Air Conditioning System* ⇨ *212*, *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *46*.

Electronic Climate Control System

The following features are available:

- Control dial for driver temperature adjustment.
- Control dial for front passenger temperature adjustment.
- Air distribution , , .
- : Fan speed.
- **ON/OFF** : Turns the climate control system on or off.
- **A/C** : Turns the air conditioning on or off.
- **AUTO** : Automatic mode.
- : Manual air recirculation.
- : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- **SYNC** : Driver and passenger temperature synchronisation.
- REAR : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors.
- : Heated seats.
- : Heated steering wheel.

See *Electronic Climate Control System* ⇨ *214*, *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *46*, *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *53*, *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *82*.

Transmission

Manual Transmission

⚠ Warning

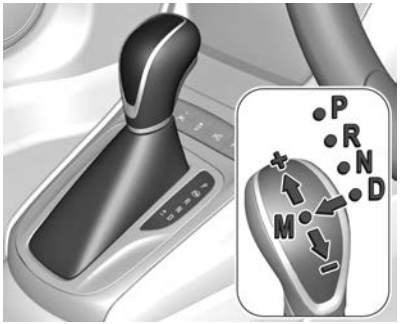
If the vehicle has a manual transmission, never get out of the vehicle without first moving the shift lever into 1st or R (Reverse), setting the parking brake and turning the ignition off. The vehicle can roll, which could cause serious injury or death.

To engage reverse, press the clutch pedal and then press the release button on the shift lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and press again; then repeat gear selection.

See *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *237*.

Automatic Transmission



P : Park position

R : Reverse gear

N : Neutral

D : Automatic mode

M : Manual mode

+ : Upshift in manual mode

– : Downshift in manual mode

The shift lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the shift lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.

See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *233*.

Parking

⚠ Warning

- Always apply parking brake.

  Apply the manual parking brake without pressing release button. Apply as firmly as possible on downhill or uphill slopes. Press the brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock engages.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

  If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Lock the vehicle.

1. Apply the park brake. Check the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.
2. Vehicles with automatic transmission: Move the shift lever to **P** (Park).

3. Close all windows, as desired.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.

Note

After running at high engine speed or with high engine loads, allow the engine to idle in **P** or **N** for approx. 30 seconds before turning off. This will help protect the turbocharger.

5. Press the button on the RKE transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors.

Note

The engine fan may keep running for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

⚠ Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Getting Started

Before Driving Off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.

See *Seat Position* ⇨ *50*.

3. Adjust the rear view mirrors.

See *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.

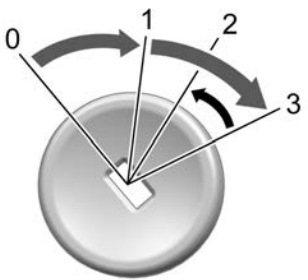
4. Fasten the seat belts.

See *Three-Point Seat Belt* ⇨ *58*.

5. Check the instrument cluster indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on and go off once the engine is started. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *88*.

Starting the Engine

Vehicles with Ignition Switch



1. Apply the park brake firmly.

2. Manual transmission : Press the clutch pedal to the floor and move the shift lever to the neutral position.

   Automatic transmission: Move the shift lever to **P** (Park).

3. Do not operate accelerator pedal.

   Turn the key briefly to position **3** and release: An automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running.

Before restarting or to switch off the engine, push the key all the way in towards the steering column, then turn the key back to position **0**.

Note

- Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.
- Do not subject the engine to full throttle acceleration or high speeds until it has reached normal operating temperature.

  Premature engine wear or damage may result.

Vehicles With Engine Start/Stop Button

1. Apply the park brake firmly.
2. Manual transmission : Press the clutch pedal to the floor and move the shift lever to the neutral position.

   Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** (Park).

3. Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

   Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly: an automatic starter control procedure operates with a short delay until the engine is running.

To switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P** (automatic transmission). Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly.

Note

- Automatic transmission: If **P** is not engaged a chime will sound.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.
- Do not subject the engine to full throttle acceleration or high speeds until it has reached normal operating temperature.

  Premature engine wear or damage may result.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *226*.

Stop-start System

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and reduce the exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, it performs an Autostop and turns off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light. The ignition remains on.

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer. After restarting, the engine speed is indicated.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 21
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 22
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 23
Remote Vehicle Start 27
Door Locks 28
Safety Locks 32

Doors
Tailgate 33

Vehicle Security
Anti-theft Alarm System 39
Immobiliser 41

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 41
Power Mirrors 41
Folding Mirrors 42
Heated Mirrors 42

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rearview Mirror 43
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 43

Windows
Windows 43
Power Windows 44
Heated Rear Window 46
Sun Visors 46

Roof
Sunroof 46

Keys and Locks

Keys

Caution
Do not attach heavy or bulky items to the ignition key.

Handle the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter with care, protect from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Note

Do not put the RKE transmitter in the load compartment.

Type 1

Type 2

Two RKE transmitters are supplied with the vehicle. Depending on vehicle model, different functions may be available.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *22*, *Door Locks* ⇨ *28*, *Tailgate* ⇨ *33*, *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *27*, *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *226*.

Replacement Transmitters

The key number is specified on a detachable tag. The key number must be quoted when ordering a replacement transmitter as it is a component of the immobiliser system.

Foldaway Key Blade

Press the button to extend the key blade. To fold the key blade, first press the button.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System has a range of up to 100 metres, but may also be much less due to external influences. The hazard warning flashers confirm operation. Handle with care, protect

from moisture and high temperatures and avoid unnecessary operation.

Do not make changes or modifications to the RKE system.

Window tinting may reduce the operating range of the RKE transmitter.

If there is a decrease in the operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

Lock: Press to lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door.

If the driver's door is not closed, the central locking system will not operate. A horn chirp will sound to alert you.

Unlock: Two unlocking modes are available:

- All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing once. To unlock all remaining doors and the tailgate, press once more.

Additionally if equipped, pressing and holding or closes or opens the power windows. See *Power Windows* ⇨ *44*.

Some of these settings can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Remote vehicle start: If equipped, press to start the engine from outside the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *27*.

Power tailgate: If equipped, press twice to open or close the power tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, must be pressed slightly longer than for door locking and unlocking.

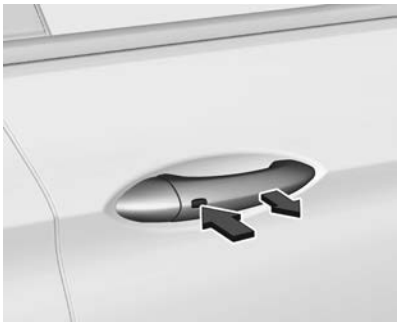
Confirmation

Operation of the central locking system is confirmed by the hazard warning lights flashing. This setting must first be activated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Keyless Entry Operation

The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle and within a radius of approx. one metre from the door in question or the tailgate.

Unlocking



Press the button on the exterior door handle and pull the handle.

Two unlocking modes are available:

- All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be unlocked by pressing the button on the exterior handle once.
- Only the driver's door and fuel filler door are unlocked by pressing the button on the driver's door exterior handle once. To unlock all remaining doors and the tailgate, press the button once more.

This setting can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Locking

Press the button on any exterior door handle. All doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door will be locked.

The system locks if any of the following occurs:

- It has been more than five seconds since unlocking.

- The button on an exterior handle has been pressed twice within five seconds to unlock the vehicle.
- Any door has been opened and all doors are now closed.

If the driver's door is not closed properly, the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle or the ignition is not off, locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more RKE transmitters in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the doors will be locked even if just one transmitter is taken out of the vehicle.

Unlocking and Opening the Tailgate

The tailgate can be unlocked and opened by pushing the touch-pad switch under the brand emblem (Hatch) or tailgate moulding (Sport wagon) when the RKE transmitter is in range.

For vehicles with a power tailgate, it can also be opened hands-free by moving your foot below the rear bumper. If the doors have not been unlocked, they will remain locked. See *Tailgate* ⇨ *33*.

Battery Replacement

Replace the battery as soon as the system no longer operates properly or the range is reduced. The need for battery replacement is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

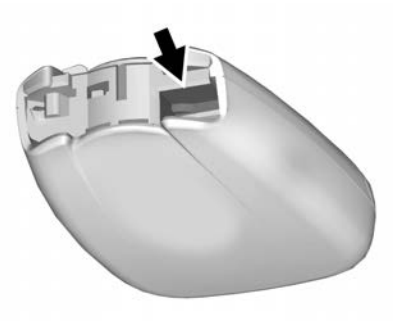
Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Type 1

1. Insert flat screwdriver into the slot on the back of the RKE transmitter and separate the back cover.
2. Remove the battery.
3. Install a new battery. Use a CR2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Insert the back cover in the area of the key blade, fold down and close.

Type 2

1. Press the button on the side of the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key from the housing.



2. Insert the key blade again approx. 6 mm and turn the key to open the housing. Take care, as inserting the key blade further than this can damage the housing.

3. Remove and replace the battery. Use a CR2032 or equivalent battery. Pay attention to the installation position.
4. Close the housing and insert the key blade.

Fault

If the central locking cannot be operated or the engine cannot be started, the cause may be one of the following:

- Fault in RKE transmitter.
- RKE transmitter is out of reception range.

- The battery voltage is too low.
- Overload of the central locking system by operating at frequent intervals. The power supply is interrupted for a short time.
- Interference from higher-power radio waves from other sources.

To rectify the cause of the fault, change the position of the RKE transmitter or use the mechanical key to unlock the doors, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *28*.

Memorised Settings

Whenever the ignition is switched off, the following settings are automatically memorised by the RKE transmitter:

- Automatic climate control.
- Lighting.
- Infotainment system.
- Door locking system.
- Sport mode settings.
- Comfort settings.

This is set for each RKE transmitter. The saved settings are automatically used the next time the ignition is turned on with the applicable memorised transmitter.

A precondition is that Personalisation by Driver is activated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system.

The status change is available only after locking and unlocking the vehicle.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, remote vehicle start allows the engine to be started from outside the vehicle.

The remote vehicle start button is on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start.

Starting the Vehicle

To start the engine using the remote vehicle start feature:

1. Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle.
2. Press and release .
3. Immediately after completing step 2, press and hold for at least four seconds or until the hazard warning lights flash.

   The hazard warning lights flashing confirms the request to start the vehicle remotely has been received.

   The engine starts, the doors will remain locked and the climate control system may come on.

   The engine will continue to run for 10 minutes. The remote vehicle start can be extended, see “Extending Engine Run Time” below.
4. To enter the vehicle, unlock the doors.

5. If the engine is running when you enter the vehicle: Press the brake pedal and press the Engine Start/Stop button before moving the shift lever out of **P**.

   If the engine is not running when you enter the vehicle: Start the engine normally. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *226*.

Extending Engine Run Time

To extend the remote vehicle start run-time to 20 minutes, repeat steps 1-3 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

For example, if the engine has been running for five minutes and the remote vehicle start is extended, the engine will run for a total of 20 minutes (10 plus 10).

A maximum of two remote vehicle starts, or a single start with an extension, is allowed between ignition cycles.

The ignition must be turned on and then back off before the remote vehicle start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote vehicle start, do one of the following:

- Aim the RKE transmitter at the vehicle and press and hold .
- Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- Turn the ignition on and then off.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Operate

The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- The RKE transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning lights are on.
- The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) in the instrument cluster is on.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts, or a single remote start with an extension, have already been used.
- The shift lever is not in **P**.

Door Locks

⚠ Danger

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

increased if the doors are not locked. So, all passengers should wear seat belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

There are several ways to lock and unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.

From the outside:

- Press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.
- Press the lock/unlock button on an outside door handle when the RKE transmitter is within one metre of the door (vehicles with keyless entry).
- Using the mechanical key in the driver's door lock.
- Press the touch pad under the brand emblem (Hatchback) or under the tailgate moulding (Sportwagon) when the RKE transmitter is within one metre of the tailgate (vehicles with keyless entry). If the doors are locked, this will only unlock and open the tailgate.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *22*, *Tailgate* ⇨ *33* or "Operation with the Mechanical Key" below.

From the inside:

- Operate the central locking buttons:
  - Press to lock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.
  - Press to unlock the doors, tailgate and fuel filler door.
- Pull the interior handle twice.

Operation with the Mechanical Key

In case of a fault, such as the vehicle battery or RKE transmitter battery being flat, the driver's door can be locked or unlocked with the mechanical key.

Type 1

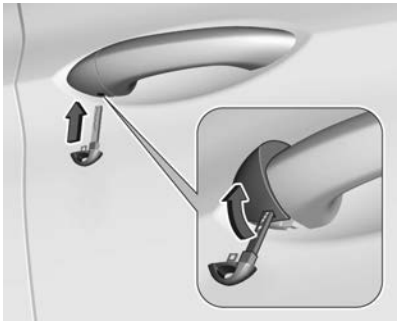
Press the button on the RKE transmitter to unfold the key blade.

Type 2

Push the button on the side of the RKE transmitter and remove the mechanical key.

Manual Unlocking

The lock cylinder in the driver's door is covered by a cap.



Insert the mechanical key blade into the recess at the bottom of the cap and swivel the key upward.

Manually unlock the driver's door by inserting the mechanical key into the lock cylinder and turning anti-clockwise.

If there is vehicle power, all other doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler door can be unlocked by pressing in the driver's door central locking buttons.

Alternatively, the other doors can be opened individually by pulling the interior handle twice. If there is no vehicle power, the tailgate and fuel filler door cannot be unlocked.

Manual Locking

Close the tailgate, fuel filler door and all doors except the driver's door, and press in the driver's door central locking buttons. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.

If there is no vehicle power, push the inside locking knob of each door except the driver's door. Then close the driver's door and lock it from the outside by turning the key in the lock cylinder clockwise.

Important: If there is no vehicle power, the fuel filler door and tailgate cannot be locked if they were unlocked.

After locking, replace the lock cylinder cap: Insert the cap with the lower side in the recesses, swivel and push the cap until it engages at the upper side.

Automatic Locking

Automatic Locking After Driving Off

This security feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door after exceeding a certain speed.

When at a standstill after driving, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically as soon as the key is removed from the ignition switch, or with keyless entry, when the ignition is switched off.

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Automatic Relock After Unlocking

This feature can be configured to automatically lock all doors, the tailgate and fuel filler door a short time after unlocking with the RKE transmitter, provided no door has been opened.

Activation or deactivation of automatic locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Passive Locking

On vehicles with keyless entry, this feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if a RKE transmitter has been recognised previously inside the vehicle, all doors have then been closed and the RKE transmitter does not remain within the vehicle.

If the RKE transmitter is in the vehicle or if the ignition is not off, passive locking will not be permitted.

If there have been two or more RKE transmitters in the vehicle and the ignition was on once, the feature locks the vehicle if just one RKE transmitter is taken out of the vehicle.

To prevent passive locking of the vehicle, e.g. when refuelling or if passengers remain in the vehicle, the system must be disabled.

To disable the system, press the driver's door central locking button for a few seconds while one door is open. An acoustic signal sounds three times to confirm deactivation. The function remains disabled until the central locking button is pressed or the ignition is switched on.

Activation or deactivation of passive locking can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*. The setting can be saved for each RKE transmitter being used.

Safety Locks

Child Safety Locks

Child safety locks help prevent the rear doors being accidentally opened by small children in the vehicle.

Open the rear door and move the pin to the front position. The door cannot be opened from inside.

To deactivate, move the pin to the rear position.

⚠ Warning

For safety, always check the lock is operating correctly (after setting) by trying to open the door from inside the vehicle.

Doors

Tailgate

Opening

⚠ Warning

To prevent dangerous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle, close the tailgate when the engine is running. If it is necessary to leave the tailgate open (while carrying bulky cargo) close all windows, switch heater controls to 'fresh' and set fan to highest speed.

Hatchback

Push the touch pad under the brand emblem and open the tailgate:

- After unlocking the doors, or
- With the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter within approx. one metre of the tailgate (vehicles with keyless entry).

Sportwagon

Push the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding and open the tailgate:

- After unlocking the doors, or
- With the RKE transmitter within approx. one metre of the tailgate (vehicles with keyless entry).

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation ⇨ 23*.

Closing

Use the interior handle to close the tailgate until it drops under its own weight.

⚠ Warning

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, before closing the tailgate check the contact area is unobstructed.

Power Tailgate

⚠ Warning

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during hands-free operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

The power tailgate can be operated by:

- Pressing x2 twice on the RKE transmitter. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, x2 must be pressed longer than during door locking or unlocking.
- The touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding and on the inside of the open tailgate.
- The operation mode switch on the inside of the driver's door.

- Hands-free operation with motion sensor below the rear bumper.

The tailgate can only be operated when the vehicle is stationary, with shift lever in **P** and with the operation mode switch not in the OFF position. The hazard warning lights flash and a chime sounds while the power tailgate is operating.

Note

Operating the power tailgate does not operate the central locking system. To open the tailgate with the button on the RKE transmitter, or with the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding, or via hands-free operation, it is not necessary to unlock the vehicle.

The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle, within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

Do not leave the RKE transmitter in the load compartment.

Lock the vehicle after closing if it was unlocked previously.

Operation with the RKE Transmitter

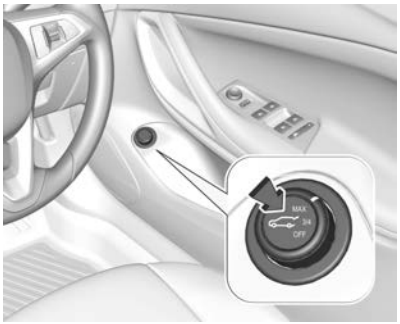
Press x2 twice to open or close the tailgate. To prevent unintended opening of the tailgate, x2 must be pressed longer than during door locking or unlocking.

Operation with the Touchpad Switch

Press the touchpad switch under the tailgate moulding until the tailgate starts to move. If the vehicle is locked, the RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle, within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

To close, press on the inside of the open tailgate until the tailgate starts to move.

Operation with the Driver's Door Switch



Press on the operation mode switch inside the driver's door until the tailgate starts to open or close.

Hands-free Operation

To open or close the tailgate with the hands-free feature, move your foot back and forth below the rear bumper in the area shown.

Do not move your foot from side to side, hold your foot still or move too slowly below the bumper.

The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle within approx. one metre of the tailgate.

When foot motion is being detected by the sensor, the system actuates the tailgate after a short delay.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch any vehicle parts below the vehicle during hands-free operation. There is a risk of injury from hot engine parts.

Settings for the hands-free operation can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Stop or Change Direction of Movement

To stop movement of the tailgate immediately:

- press x2 once on the RKE transmitter, or
- press the touchpad switch under the exterior tailgate moulding, or
- press on the inside of the open tailgate, or
- press on the operation mode switch inside the driver's door.

Pressing one of the switches again will reverse the direction of movement.

Operation Modes

The power tailgate has three modes of operation, which are controlled by the operation mode switch on the inside of the driver's door.

To change the mode, turn the switch:

- Normal mode MAX: The power tailgate opens to full height.
- Intermediate mode 3/4: The power tailgate opens to a reduced height that can be adjusted.
- Off: The tailgate can only be operated manually.

Adjusting Reduced Opening Height in Intermediate Mode

The height the tailgate automatically stops at can be adjusted to allow for low overhead objects such as a garage door, etc.

1. Turn the operation mode switch inside the driver's door to 3/4.
2. Open the power tailgate using any operation switch.
3. Stop the movement at the desired height by pressing any operation switch.

   If required, manually move the stopped tailgate to the desired position.

4. Press and hold the button on the inside of the open tailgate for three seconds.

   A chime sound indicates the new setting has been recorded and the hazard warning lights will flash.

Note

- Adjusting opening height should be programmed at ground level.
- The reduced height can only set at an opening angle of above 30°.

When the operation mode switch is set to intermediate mode 3/4, the power tailgate will stop opening at the newly set position.

The tailgate can only be held open if a minimum height is exceeded (minimum opening angle from 30°). The opening height cannot be programmed below that height.

Safety Function

If the power tailgate encounters an obstacle during opening or closing, the direction of movement will automatically be reversed slightly.

Multiple obstacles in one power cycle will deactivate tailgate operation. In this case, close or open the tailgate manually.

The power tailgate has pinch sensors on each side edge. If the sensors detect obstacles between the tailgate and body, the tailgate will open, until it is activated again or closed manually. The safety function is indicated by a warning chime.

Remove all obstacles before resuming normal power operation.

If the vehicle is equipped with a genuine Holden towbar and a trailer is electrically connected, the power tailgate can only be opened with the touchpad switch or closed with in the open tailgate.

Ensure there are no obstacles in the movement area.

Overload

If the power tailgate is repeatedly operated at short intervals, the power operation function may be temporarily disabled. Move tailgate manually into its end position to reset the system.

General Hints for Tailgate Operation

⚠ Warning

To prevent dangerous exhaust fumes entering the vehicle, close the tailgate when the engine is

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

running. If it is necessary to leave the tailgate open (while carrying bulky cargo) close all windows, switch heater controls to 'fresh' and set fan to highest speed.

Caution

Before opening the tailgate, check for overhead obstructions such as a garage door, etc., to avoid damage to the tailgate.

Always check the movement area above and behind the tailgate.

Note

- The installation of certain heavy accessories onto the tailgate may affect its ability to remain open.
- The operation of the power tailgate is disabled under low vehicle battery conditions. In this case, the tailgate may not even be manually operable.
- With the power tailgate disabled and all doors unlocked, the tailgate can only be operated manually. In this event, manually closing the tailgate requires significant force.
- At low outside temperatures, the tailgate may not open fully by itself. In this event, lift the tailgate manually to its normal end position.

Vehicle Security

Anti-theft Alarm System

The anti-theft alarm system is combined with the central door locking system. It monitors the doors, tailgate, bonnet and ignition.

Activation

All doors must be closed and for vehicles with keyless entry, the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must not remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the system cannot be activated.

- RKE transmitter:
  - Self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing once.
  - Directly by pressing twice within five seconds.
- Keyless entry: Self-activated 30 seconds after locking the vehicle by pressing the button on a respective exterior door handle.

- Keyless entry with passive locking enabled: Briefly activated after passive locking occurs.

Status LED

A status LED is integrated in the sensor on top of the instrument panel.

Status during the first 30 seconds of anti-theft alarm system activation:

- LED illuminates: Test, arming delay.
- LED flashes quickly: Doors, tailgate or bonnet not completely closed, or system fault.

Status after system is armed:

- LED flashes slowly: System is armed.

Seek the assistance of a Holden dealer in the event of faults.

Deactivation

- RKE transmitter: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

- Keyless entry: Unlocking the vehicle by pressing the button on a respective exterior door handle deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.

  The RKE transmitter must be outside the vehicle, within a range of approx. one metre of the relevant door side.

  The system is not deactivated by unlocking the driver's door with the mechanical key or with the central locking button in the passenger compartment.

Alarm

When triggered, the alarm horn sounds and the hazard warning lights flash simultaneously.

The anti-theft alarm system can be deactivated by pressing , by pressing the switch on the door handle (with keyless entry) or switching on the ignition.

A triggered alarm, which has not been interrupted by the driver, will be indicated by the hazard warning

lights. They will flash quickly three times the next time the vehicle is unlocked with the RKE transmitter.

Additionally a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre after switching on the ignition.

If the vehicle's battery is to be disconnected (e.g. for maintenance work), the alarm siren must be deactivated: switch the ignition on then off, then disconnect the vehicle's battery within 15 seconds.

Immobiliser

The immobiliser is activated automatically once the ignition is turned off.

If the instrument cluster control indicator flashes when the ignition is on, there is a fault in the system and the engine cannot be started.

Switch off the ignition and repeat the start attempt. If required, retry with the RKE transmitter placed in the centre console transmitter pocket. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *226*.

If the control indicator continues flashing, attempt to start the engine using another RKE transmitter.

Seek the assistance of your dealer.

Note

- Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) tags such as security passes, etc. may cause interference with the RKE transmitter. Do not have them placed near the transmitter when starting the vehicle.
- The immobiliser does not lock the doors. You should always lock the vehicle after leaving it.

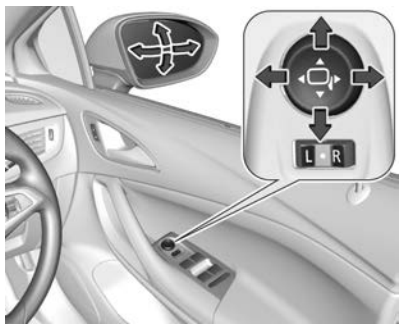
Exterior Mirrors

Convex Mirrors

The shape of the mirror makes objects appear smaller, which will affect the ability to estimate distances.

Symbols for the side blind zone alert are displayed in the mirrors. See *Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)* ⇨ *274*.

Power Mirrors



Select the relevant exterior mirror by pushing the switch to (**L**) for the left mirror or (**R**) for the right mirror.

Press the control to adjust the selected mirror in the desired direction.

In position ● no mirror is selected.

Folding Mirrors

For safety, the exterior mirrors will swing out of their normal mounting position if they are struck with sufficient force.

Reposition the mirror by applying slight pressure to the mirror housing.

Electric Folding

Select position ● and then push the control ▽. Both exterior mirrors will fold.

Push ▽ again to return both exterior mirrors to their original position.

If an electrically folded mirror is manually folded, pushing ▽ will only electrically fold the other mirror.

Heated Mirrors

Operated together with heated rear window by pressing REAR. An LED in the button illuminates.

Heating will operate with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

To reduce glare from following vehicles at night, adjust the lever on the underside of the mirror housing.

Note

The rear view clarity is reduced when the mirror is set to the anti-glare position.

Return the mirror back to its original position as soon as there is no longer any glare.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The vehicle may have an automatic dimming rear view mirror. Glare from following vehicles at night is automatically reduced.

Windows

For vehicles with an automatic dimming interior mirror, do not attach stickers or similar to the windscreen in the area of the interior mirror. Otherwise the detection zone of the sensor and the view area of the camera in the mirror housing could be restricted.

Windscreen Replacement

Caution
If the vehicle has a front-looking camera sensor for the driver assistance systems, it is very important that any windscreen replacement is performed accurately. Otherwise, these systems may not operate correctly and there is a risk of unexpected behaviour/or messages from these systems.

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

The power windows can be operated when the ignition is on, or in retained accessory power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *228*.

Operate the switch for the respective window by pushing to open or pulling to close.

Driver's Door (Hatchback), All Doors (Sportwagon)

Pushing or pulling gently to the first detent: The window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing or pulling firmly to the second detent then releasing: The window moves up or down automatically with the safety function enabled.

To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Except Driver's Door (Hatchback)

Pushing gently to the first detent or pulling: The window moves up or down as long as the switch is operated.

Pushing firmly to the second detent then releasing: The window moves down automatically.

To stop movement, operate the switch once more in the same direction.

Safety Function

If the window glass encounters resistance during automatic closing above approx. half way, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Override

In the event of closing difficulties due to frost or the like, turn the ignition on, then pull the switch to the first detent and hold. The

window moves up without the safety function enabled while the switch is being operated.

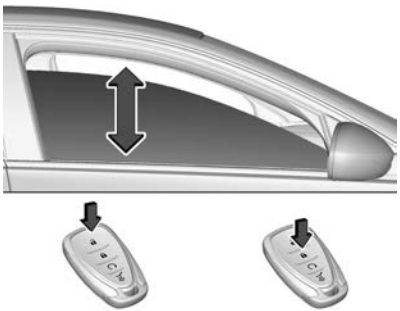
To stop movement, release the switch.

Child Safety System for Rear Windows

Press to deactivate the rear door power windows; the LED illuminates. To activate, press again.

Operating Windows from Outside (Sportwagon)

If equipped, the windows can be operated remotely from outside the vehicle.



Press and hold for more than two seconds to open the windows.

Press and hold for more than two seconds to close the windows. Release the button to stop window movement. If the windows are fully opened or closed, the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

This function can be activated or deactivated, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Overload

If the windows are repeatedly operated within short intervals, window operation may be disabled for some time.

Initialising the Power Windows

If the windows cannot be closed automatically, such as after disconnecting the vehicle battery, a warning message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Activate the window electronics as follows:

1. Close the doors.
2. Turn the ignition on.
3. Push the switch until the window is completely open and keep pushing for additional two seconds.
4. Pull a power window switch until the window is closed and keep pulling for additional two seconds.

5. Repeat for each window.

Heated Rear Window

Operated together with heated exterior mirrors by pressing REAR. An LED in the button illuminates.

Heating will operate with the engine running and is switched off automatically after a short time.

Sun Visors

The sun visors can be folded down or swivelled to the side to prevent glare.

To view the vanity mirror, lift the cover from the lower edge. Lamps illuminate when the cover is opened. The mirror covers should be closed when driving.

A ticket holder is located on the backside of the sun visor.

Roof

Sunroof

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the sunroof. There is a risk of injury, particularly to children.

Keep a close watch on the moving parts when operating the sunroof. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.

The sunroof can be operated when the ignition is on, or in retained accessory power mode. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *228*.

Open or Close

Press or gently to the first detent: The sunroof is opened or closed as long as the switch is operated.

Press or firmly to the second detent then release: The sunroof is opened or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled. To stop movement, operate the switch once more.

Raise or Close

Press or : The sunroof is raised or closed automatically. During closing the safety function is enabled.

Sunblind

The sunblind can be manually operated. Close or open the sunblind by sliding. When the sunroof is open, the sunblind is always open.

General Hints

Safety Function

If the sunroof encounters resistance during automatic closing, it is immediately stopped and opened again.

Safety Function Override

In the event of closing difficulties, e.g. due to frost, hold the switch pressed to the second detent. The sunroof closes with safety function disabled while the switch is held. To stop movement, release the switch.

Initialising the Sunroof

After a power failure, it may only be possible to operate the sunroof to a limited extent. Have the system initialised by your dealer.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 48

Front Seats
Seat Position 50
Seat Adjustment 51
Front Seat Armrest 53
Heated Front Seats 53

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 54

Seat Belts
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 57
Three-Point Seat Belt 58
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 59
Seat Belt Care 59
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 60

Airbag System
Airbag System 60
Front Airbag System 61
Side Airbag System 62
Curtain Airbag System 63
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 64
Notices for Customer Installed Equipment 64
Airbag System Check 64
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 64

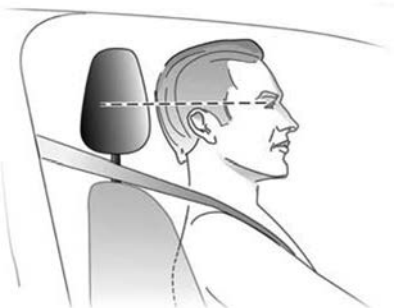
Child Restraints
Older Children 65
Infants and Young Children 65
Child Restraint Systems 66
Where to Put the Restraint 68
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 69
Child Restraint Installation Locations 69
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 69

Head Restraints

⚠ Warning

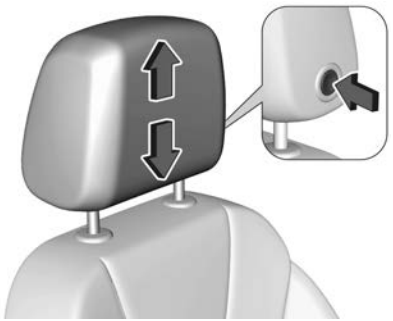
The head restraint is a safety feature.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.



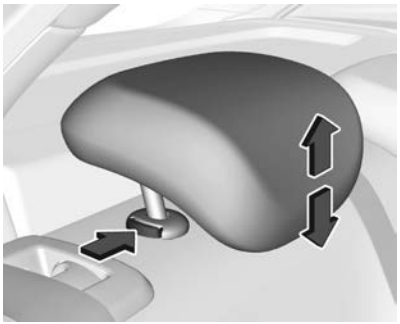
Adjustment

Front Seats



Press the release button, adjust the height and engage.

Rear Seat



Pull the head restraint upwards, or press the catch to release and push the head restraint downwards.

Removal

⚠ Warning

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not

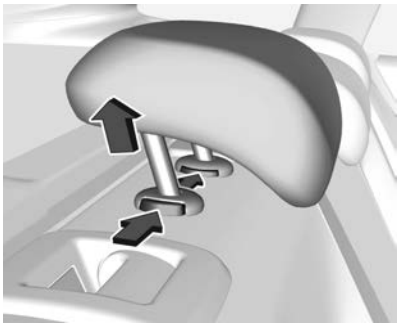
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

Rear Seat

Removal of rear head restraints for load compartment extension, etc.



Press both catches, pull the head restraint upwards and remove.

Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.

⚠ Warning

Do not sit closer than 25 cm to the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers. Unauthorised seat covers may impair the operation of the side impact airbags (SIAB).

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Always sit centrally in the seat.

Do not place any object between the seat and the door or the seat and the centre console. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *60*.

- Sit with the buttocks as far back against the backrest as possible. Adjust the distance between the seat and the pedals so the legs are slightly angled when fully pressing the pedals. Slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Set the seat height high enough to have a clear field of vision on all sides and of all display instruments. There should be at least one hand width of clearance between the head and the roof frame. Your thighs should rest lightly on the seat without pressing into it.
- Sit with the shoulders as far back against the backrest as possible. Set the backrest rake so it is possible to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel. Do not angle the backrest too far back. We recommend a maximum rake of approx. 25°.
- Adjust the seat and steering wheel in a way that the wrist rests on top of the steering

wheel while the arm is fully extended and the shoulders are on the backrest.

- Adjust the steering wheel. See *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *81*.
- Adjust the head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *48*.
- Adjust the thigh support so there is a space of approx. two fingers wide between the edge of the seat and the hollow of the knee.
- Adjust the lumbar support so it supports the natural shape of the spine.

Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is moving as the seat could move suddenly causing the driver to lose control.

⚠ Warning

Before moving the seat, ensure the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.

Manual Seats

Drive only with seats and backrests engaged.

Note

The following shows all available configurations. Some may not be fitted to your vehicle.

Longitudinal Adjustment

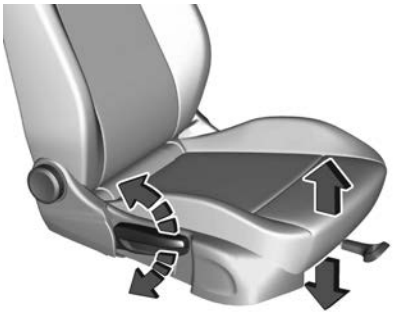
Lift the handle, slide the seat to the desired position then release the handle.

Try to move the seat back and forth to ensure the seat is locked in place.

Backrest Inclination

Turn the hand-wheel. Do not lean on backrest when adjusting.

Seat Height



Move the lever in a pumping motion:

Up : seat higher

Down : seat lower

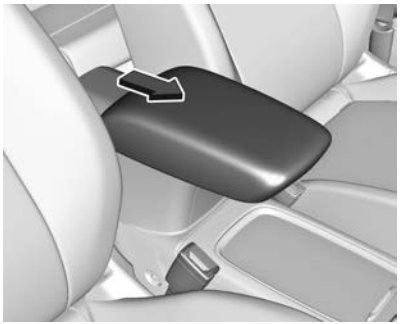
Lumbar Support

Adjust the lumbar support using the four-way switch to suit personal requirements.

To move the support up and down: push switch up or down.

To increase and decrease support: push switch forwards or backwards.

Front Seat Armrest



The armrest can be slid forwards by 10 cm.

Under the armrest is a storage compartment. See *Armrest Storage* ⇨ *73*.

Heated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.

Do not fit any seat cover (except genuine Holden accessory covers) to heated seats.

Adjust seat heating to the desired setting by pressing for the seat one or more times. The lights in the button indicate the setting, three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Seat heating will be reduced automatically from the high to medium setting after 30 minutes.

Heated seats are operational when the engine is running and during an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*.

Rear Seats

The vehicle has a two-section rear seat backrest. All sections can be folded down.

Before folding the rear seat backrests, perform the following if required:

- Remove the load compartment cover (Hatchback). See *Boot Cover (Hatchback)* ⇨ *73*.
- Remove the roller blind (Sport wagon, if equipped). See *Cargo Cover (Sportwagon)* ⇨ *74*.
- Lower the rear head restraints. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *48*.
- Remove the rear head restraints to allow the backrests to fully rest on the seat cushions. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *48*.

⚠ Warning

Do not press the release button on the top of the seatback while the vehicle is moving. This could cause damage or injuries to the occupants.

Do not allow passengers to sit on the folded seatbacks while the vehicle is in motion. Unrestrained luggage or passengers on a folded seatback could be thrown within or ejected from the vehicle in a sudden stop or accident.

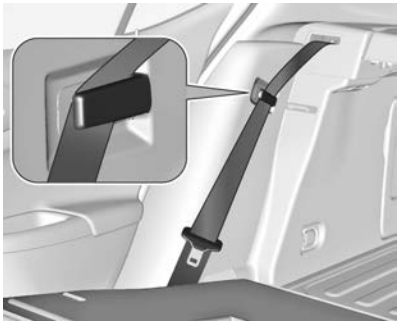
Caution

Do not trap the seat belt when returning the seatback or seat section to the upright position.

Hatchback

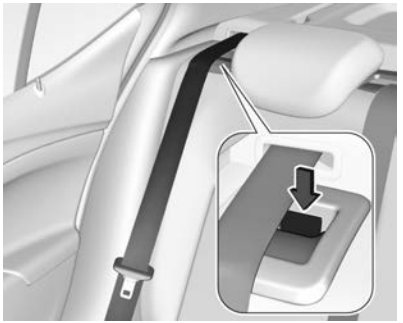
Guide the seat belts of the outer seats through side supports to protect them against damage. When folding the backrests, pull the seat belts along with them.

Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.



Take the seat belt out of the seat backrest guide and put it behind the retainer as shown in the illustration.

To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.



The backrest is securely engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

⚠ Warning

When folding the rear seat backrest, ensure the backrest is securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The centre seat belt might lock if the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the seat belt retractor, push in the seat belt and withdraw it approx. 20 mm, then release.

Sportwagon

Insert the latch plates of the outer seat belts into side holder to protect the belts against damage.

Pull the release lever on one or both outer sides and fold down the backrests onto the seat cushion.

To fold up, raise the backrests and guide them into an upright position until they engage audibly.

The backrest is securely engaged when the red mark near the release lever is no longer visible.

⚠ Warning

When folding the rear seat backrest, ensure the backrest is securely locked in position before driving. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or damage to the load or vehicle in the event of hard braking or a collision.

The centre seat belt might lock if the backrest is folded up too quickly. To unlock the seat belt retractor, push in the seat belt and withdraw it approx. 20 mm, then release.

Seat Belts

How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

⚠ Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

The seat belts are locked during heavy vehicle acceleration or deceleration, holding the occupants

in the seat. Thereby the risk of injury is considerably reduced. Fasten the seat belt before each trip.

Periodically check all parts of the seat belt system for damage, soiling and correct functionality. Ensure they draw out smoothly and retract correctly when not in use. Have damaged components replaced immediately.

Note

Ensure the seat belts are not damaged by sharp-edged objects or trapped in a door, etc. Prevent dirt from getting into the belt retractors.

Seat Belt Reminder

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt reminder, indicated for front seats by and , or for rear seats by in the Driver Information Centre (DIC. See *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *95*.

Belt Force Limiters

During a collision, stress on the body is reduced by the gradual release of the belt.

Seat Belt Pretensioners

In the event of a head-on, rear-end or side-on collision of a certain severity, the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts are tightened by one pretensioner per seat.

Deployment of the belt pretensioners is indicated by continuous illumination of instrument cluster indicator . See *Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ *96*.

Seat belt pretensioners can only be triggered once and then must be replaced.

Note

- Do not affix or install accessories or other objects that may interfere with the operation of the belt pretensioners.
- Do not make any modifications to belt pretensioner components.

Three-Point Seat Belt

Fitting

The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

1. Pull the metal tongue across your body.
2. Clip it into the buckle.
3. When the metal tongue is locked safely into place you will hear a click.
4. Give a gentle pull on the buckle to ensure full engagement.

5. Settle the belt at the hip.
6. Run your hand under the sash from hip to shoulder.

The belt should fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

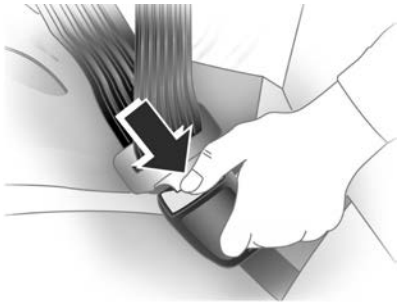
Note

For your safety, wear the lap section of the seat belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist or abdomen.

The Emergency-locking Retractor Belt allows you to move while the vehicle is travelling normally, but locks immediately on fast braking, impact with a solid object or any quick movement by the wearer.

Rear seat belts feature an Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR). If the shoulder portion of a rear seat belt is pulled out all the way, the locking feature may be engaged. If this happens, let the belt go back all the way and start again. See *Child Restraint Installation Locations* ⇨ *69*.

Removing



1. Press the release button on the buckle.
2. Allow the belt to retract.
3. Check that it fully retracts without twisting or turning.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Seat Belt Care

⚠ Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

When triggered, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

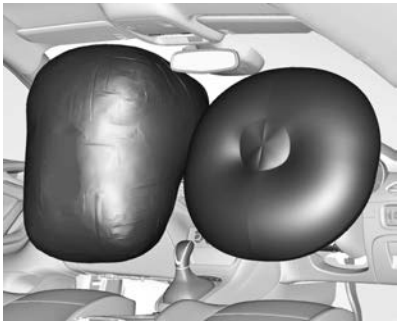
Airbags are part of the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts.

Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

Front Airbag System



The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the passenger side. These are identified by the word AIRBAG.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

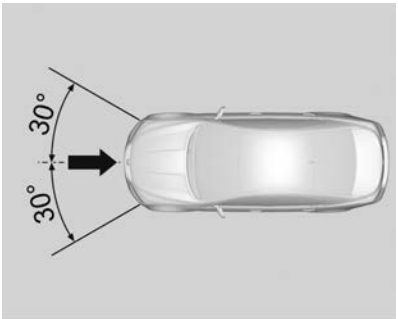
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Side Airbag System

Side Impact Airbags (SIAB) are stored in the outer side of the front seats and can be identified by the word AIRBAG.

Note

SIAB deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.

Because there is limited time available to detect some side impacts, it is not possible to deploy the SIAB in all serious accidents.

A SIAB will deploy in certain severe side impacts. SIAB are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the front, rear, or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

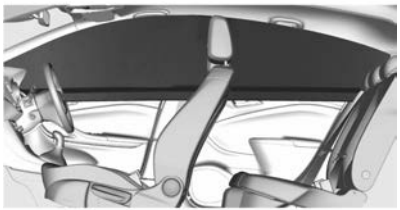
Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the Side Impact Airbags (SIAB).

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

Curtain Airbag System



Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle. They can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the roof pillars.

The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts. The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the illustration.

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

Airbags inflate and deflate within milliseconds.

Fifteen seconds after any airbag or seat belt pretensioner has been activated (the vehicle has stopped and provided there is battery power), the following will occur:

- The engine will switch off.
- The fuel pump will switch off.
- The hazard lamps will switch on.
- The interior lamp will switch on.
- The doors will unlock.

Switch the ignition off and then on if restarting the engine is required.

Notices for Customer Installed Equipment

⚠ Warning

The fitting of roo bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling. See “Fitting roo bars” under *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *285*.

Airbag System Check

The in the instrument cluster illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on. This indicates the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is operational.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately:

- If does not illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- If illuminates when driving.
- If the warning 'Airbag Fault' is displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

  In these instances the SRS may not function correctly in the event of an accident. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *60*.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

Note

After an accident where the SRS has deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The SRS should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

Child Restraints

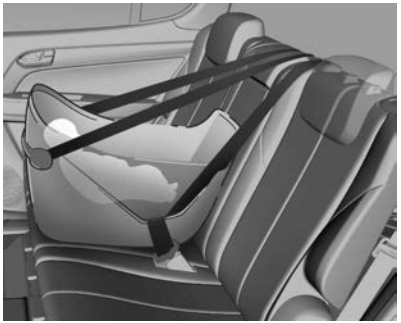
Older Children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

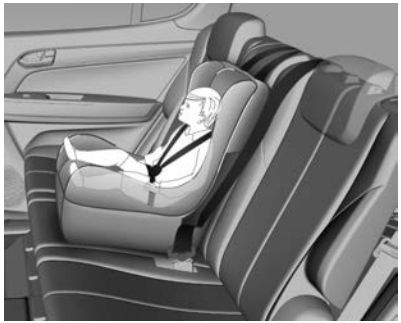
Infants and Young Children

Infants



Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young Children



Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster Seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Child Restraint Systems

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.

⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers and pets are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia, and in New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.

⚠ Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

⚠ Warning

Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint into the vehicle.

Note

Refer to the relevant legislation, an approved child restraint fitting station or capsule manufacturer's information for the recommended type of child restraint to use.

Selecting the Right System

Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Older children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip

Where to Put the Restraint

⚠ Warning

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

following illustrations) are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

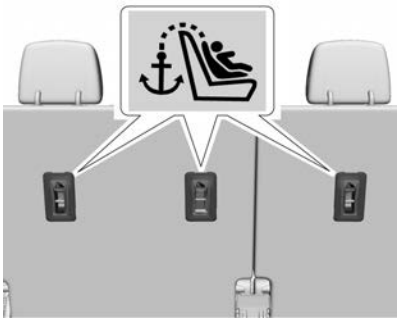
Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Note

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, please contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings



Top tether anchors are located on the back of the rear seat backs and are identified with symbol .

Do not attach anything other than a child restraint system to the vehicle top tether anchors.

Child Restraint Installation Locations

The vehicle has been designed to accommodate child restraints on the rear seat.

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitting carefully.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Seat Belts

ALR seat belts are provided at the rear seating positions. Use these in conjunction with a top tether strap when a non-ISOFIX child seat is being used.

Extend the seat belt fully and then fit the belt around the applicable locations on the child restraint and fasten the buckle. Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint.

Allow the belt to retract. While the belt is retracting, a clicking noise can be heard which indicates the ALR mechanism is functioning. The seat belt is locked and cannot be extended until fully retracted, enabling the belt to be fitted securely to the child restraint.

To release the locking mechanism, undo the buckle and allow the seat belt to fully retract. It will then function as a normal Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seat belt until fully extended again.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

ISOFIX mounting locations are marked by a on the rear seat back.

Open the cover and fasten the vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraint to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Note

Ensure the seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchor points.

Storage

Storage Compartments
Storage Compartments 71
Glove Box 71
Cupholders 71
Front Storage 72
Armrest Storage 73

Additional Storage Features
Boot Cover (Hatchback) 73
Rear Floor Storage Cover 73
Cargo Cover (Sportwagon) 74
Cargo Tie-Downs 75

Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System 77

Information on Loading the Vehicle
Information on Loading the Vehicle 78

Storage Compartments

⚠ Warning

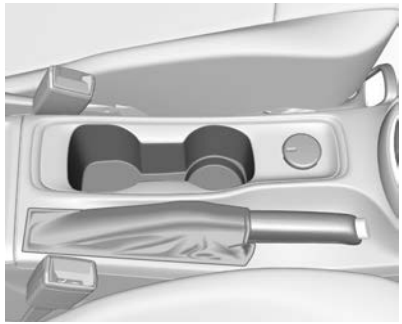
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Glove Box

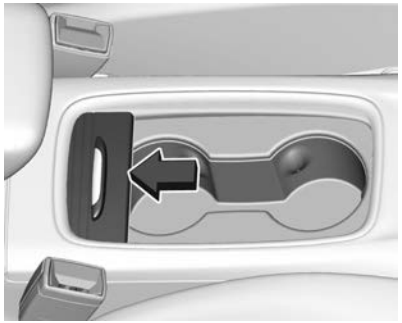
Open the glovebox by lifting the lever. The glovebox should always be closed whilst driving.

The glovebox also features pen and coin holders.

Cupholders



Cup holders are located in the centre console.



If equipped, the cup holders are located under a cover. Slide the cover rearward to open.

Front Storage

A storage bin and/or phone holder may be located at the front of the centre console.

A storage box is located next to the steering wheel. Lift the latch to open.

Armrest Storage

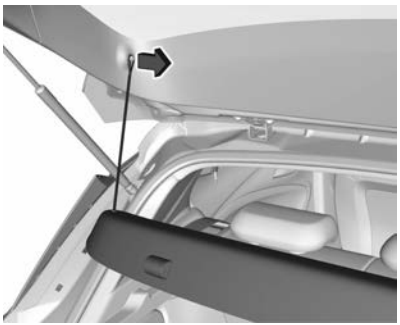
Push the button and raise the armrest. The armrest must be in the rearmost position before it can be opened.

Additional Storage Features

Boot Cover (Hatchback)

Do not place any objects on the cover.

Removal



Unhook the retaining straps from the tailgate.

Lift the cover at the rear and then at the front.

Remove the cover.

Installation

Engage the cover in the side guides and insert downwards.

Attach the retaining straps to the tailgate.

Rear Floor Storage Cover

Hatchback

The rear floor cover can be removed.

Raise cover at the rear and slightly rotate at on side before removing.

Sportwagon

The rear floor cover can be folded.

Pull the handle and fold the rear part of the cover forward.

Set the folded cover upright behind the rear seat backrests.

Cargo Cover (Sportwagon)

Use the cargo cover to provide added security for items stored beneath.

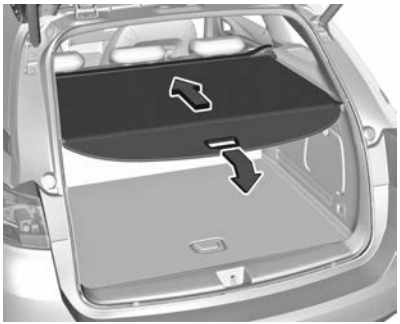
⚠ Warning

Do not place objects on the cargo cover. Sudden stops or turns can cause objects to be thrown in the vehicle. You or others could be injured.

Closing

Using the handle, pull the cover towards the rear and upwards until it engages in the side trim retainers.

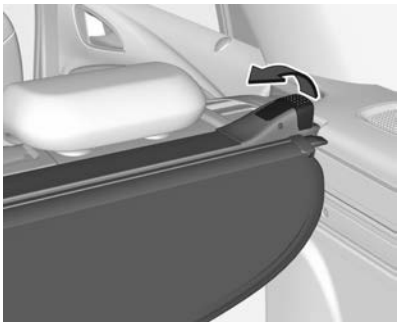
Opening



Pull the cover handle to the rear and downwards.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removal



Open the cover.

From the right-hand side, pull and hold the release lever up.

Lift the cover first on the right side and then remove it from the recesses.

Installation

Insert the left side of the cover in its recess, then pull and hold the release lever up. Insert the right-hand side of the cover in the recess and engage.

Cargo Tie-Downs

The cargo tie-downs are designed to secure items against slippage and are to be used in conjunction with straps or a luggage net.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

Use only approved tie-down straps and convenience net to secure your loads. Do not use elasticised straps.

Never attach more than one tie-down strap to any single cargo tie-down.

Protect the tie-down straps from sharp edges of the load. Replace them if they begin to wear.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Make sure the back seat is locked in the upright position whenever carrying heavy loads. This is a basic requirement for protection against load displacement in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

The rear seat in the upright position provides greater protection against load displacement.

The driving characteristics of the vehicle can be affected because the centre of gravity is altered when there is a load in the cargo area. Match your speed and driving style according to how the vehicle is loaded.

Make sure the rear axle load of the vehicle is not exceeded. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *342*.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The maximum load for the tie-down system is 80 kg single mass when used in conjunction with the Holden approved straps.

That is, if an object weighs 80 kg, only one object can be held by the tie-down system.

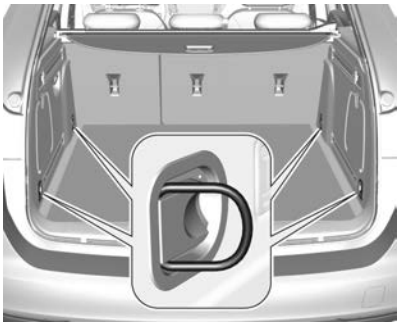
Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

Place loads as low down and as far forward in the cargo area as possible. That is, against the back seat.

Hatchback

The tie-downs are located at each corner of the rear compartment.

Sportwagon



The tie-downs are located at each corner of the rear compartment. Fold the tie-down hooks when not in use.

Roof Rack System

A Holden genuine roof rack system can be purchased as an accessory and used to load items.

For safety reasons and to avoid damage to the roof, only the approved roof rack is recommended. For further information, contact your dealer.

⚠ Warning

Ensure all objects carried on the roof rack system are loaded evenly and are secured tightly with straps.

Never carry objects that are longer or wider than the vehicle unless using a Holden certified accessory carrier.

Caution

The load, including the weight of the roof rack, must not exceed 75 kg.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to ensure the roof rack and cargo are securely fastened.

Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's centre of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt manoeuvres; otherwise loss of control may result.

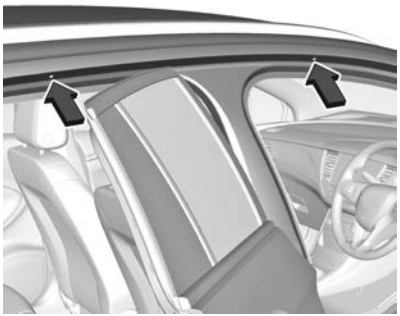
⚠ Warning

Sportwagon

The roof rails are a styling element only and are not designed to carry any load. Installation of roof racks or other accessories on the roof rails is not permitted.

Use the designated mounting points in the door frames exclusively.

Fitting



Open all doors. The mounting points are located in each door frame of the vehicle's body.

Fasten the roof rack according to the installation instructions supplied with the roof rack.

Remove the roof rack when not in use.

Information on Loading the Vehicle

- Heavy objects in the load compartment should be placed against the seat backrests. Ensure the backrests are securely engaged and the red markings near the release lever are not visible.

  If objects are going to be stacked, heavier objects should be placed at the bottom.

- Secure loose objects in the load compartment to prevent them from sliding. Secure the load

with straps attached to the cargo tie-down points. See *Cargo Tie-Downs* ⇨ *75*.

- Do not allow the load to protrude above the upper edge of the backrests.
- Do not place any objects on the load compartment cover or the instrument panel, and do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel.
- Do not place objects in the area where the front, side, or curtain airbags inflate.
- The load must not obstruct the operation of the pedals, parking brake and gear shift lever, or hinder the freedom of movement of the driver. Do not place any unsecured objects in the interior.
- Do not drive with an open load compartment.
- Do not exceed the maximum vehicle carrying capacity or vehicle axle loads. Overloading is a safety hazard. See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *342*.
- Driving with a roof load increases the sensitivity of the vehicle to cross-winds and has a detrimental effect on vehicle handling due to the vehicle's higher centre of gravity. Distribute the load evenly and secure it properly with retaining straps.

  Check and retighten the straps frequently.

  Adjust the tyre pressure and vehicle speed according to the load conditions.

  The permissible roof load is 75 kg. The roof load is the combined weight of the roof rack and the load.

Carrying Portable Gas Cylinders in Vehicles

⚠ Warning

Gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion. As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders. They must be restrained from rolling around, and where possible, placed in the load area of the vehicle.

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported, that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used. Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment 81
Steering Wheel Controls 81
Heated Steering Wheel 82
Horn 82
Windshield Wiper/Washer 83
Rear Window Wiper/Washer ... 85
Outside Temperature 86
Clock 86
Power Outlets 87

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Instrument Cluster 88
Speedometer 91
Odometer 92
Trip Odometer 92
Tachometer 93
Fuel Gauge 93
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 93
Service Display 94
Turn Signal 95
Seat Belt Reminders 95
Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light 96
Charging System Light 96
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 96
Brake System Warning Light ... 97
Electric Parking Brake Light ... 97
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 97
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 98
Gear Shifting Light 98
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light 98
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 98
Follow Distance Indicator Light 98
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 99
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light 99
Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light 99
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 99
Engine Oil Pressure Light 99
Low Fuel Warning Light 100
Immobiliser Light 100
High-Beam On Light 100
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light 100
Rear Fog Light 100
Lamps On Reminder 100
Cruise Control Light 100
Door Ajar Light 101

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC) 101

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 106
Warning Chimes 107
Battery Voltage and Charging Messages 107

Vehicle Personalisation

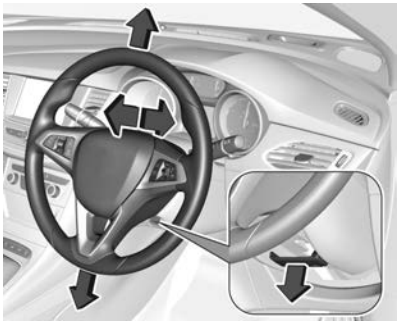
Vehicle Personalisation 108

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.



Unlock the lever below the steering column. Adjust the steering wheel and then engage lever. Ensure it is fully locked.

Do not adjust the steering wheel unless the vehicle is stationary and the steering wheel lock has been released.

Steering Wheel Controls

Driver Information Centre (DIC) menus, the infotainment system and a connected mobile phone, and some driver assistance systems can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.

The illustrations show different versions.

See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *101*, *Overview* ⇨ *126* or *154*, *Driver Assistance Systems* ⇨ *244*.

Heated Steering Wheel

Activate the heated steering wheel by pressing . A LED in the switch will illuminate.

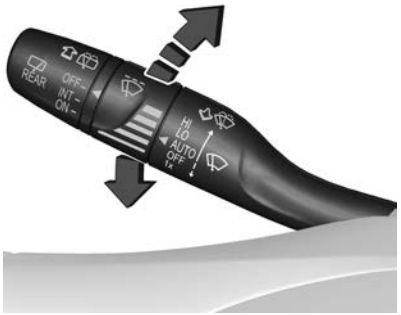
The recommended grip areas of the steering wheel are heated faster and to a higher temperature than the other areas. Heating is operational when the engine is running and during an Auto-stop.

Horn

Press .

Windshield Wiper/Washer

Windscreen Wiper



HI : fast

LO : slow

INT / AUTO : intermittent operation, or automatic operation with rain sensor (if equipped)

OFF : off

For a single wipe when the windscreen wiper is off, press the lever downwards to position **1x**.

Caution

Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

Do not use if the windscreen is iced over. Switch off in car washes.

Intermittent Operation

Wiper lever in position INT.

Turn the adjuster band to adjust the wiper interval; up for shorter interval, down for longer interval.

Auto (Rain Sensor) Operation

In AUTO position, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically regulates the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

Turn the adjuster band to adjust the sensitivity of the rain sensor; up for higher sensitivity, down for lower sensitivity.

Caution

Switch off the rain sensor by setting the lever to the **OFF** position before entering a car wash.

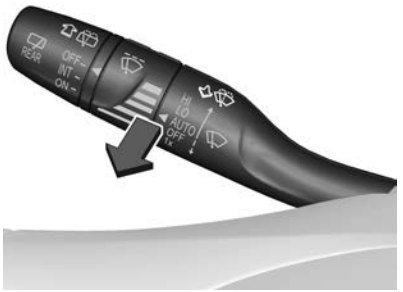
Replace the wiper blades as soon as they do not completely remove water from the windscreen. If the blades are not replaced, the wipers may continue to wipe even though most of the screen is dry.

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, make sure that the windscreen is fully defrosted before switching on the rain sensor.

Keep the sensor free from dust, dirt and ice.

The rain sensor function can be activated or deactivated. When it is deactivated, the wipers operate as manual intermittent wipers. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Windscreen Washer



Pull the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the windscreen and the wiper operates a few times.

See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *299*.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer

Rear Window Wiper

Turn the outer cap to activate the rear window wiper:

OFF : off

INT : intermittent operation

ON : continuous operation

Caution
Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

Do not use if the rear window is frozen. Switch off in car washes.

The rear window wiper operates automatically when the windscreen wiper is switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

Activation or deactivation of this function can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Rear Window Washer

Push the lever. Washer fluid is sprayed onto the rear window and the wiper operates a few times.

The rear window washer system is deactivated when the fluid level is low. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *299*.

Outside Temperature

The outside temperature is displayed in the infotainment screen when the ignition is on.

A drop in temperature is indicated immediately and a rise in temperature after a time delay.

The illustration shows an example.

If the outside temperature drops to 3 °C, a warning message may be displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

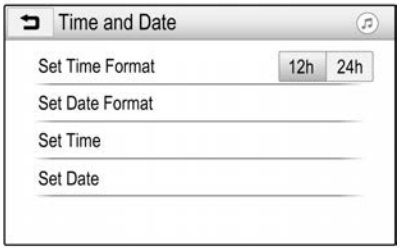
Clock

Date and time are shown in the infotainment system display.

MyLink Infotainment System

Press ⌂ and then select **Settings**.

Select **Time and Date** to display the each submenu.



Set Time Format

To select the desired time format, touch the screen buttons **12h** or **24h**.

Set Date Format

To select the desired date format, select **Set Date Format** and choose between the available options in the submenu.

Set Time, Set Date

To adjust the time and date settings, select **Set Time** or **Set Date**.

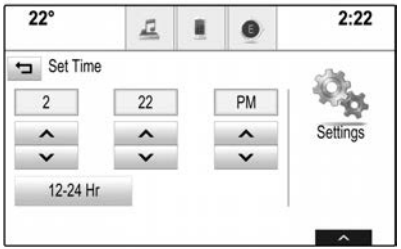
Touch **+** and **–** to adjust the settings.

MyLink with Built–in Navigation Infotainment System

Press ⌂ and then select **Settings**.

Select **Time and Date** and then select **Set Time**, **Set Date** or **Clock Display** to enter each submenu.

Set Time



Touch **12-24 Hr** to select a time mode. If 12-hour mode is selected, a third column for AM and PM setting is displayed. Select the desired option.

Adjust the time by touching ∧ or ∨ .

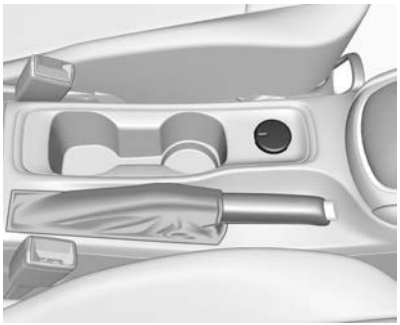
Set Date

Adjust the date by touching ∧ or ∨ .

Clock Display

Select **Clock Display** to enter the submenu. To turn off the digital clock display in the menus, select **Off**.

Power Outlets



A 12 volt power outlet is located in the centre console.

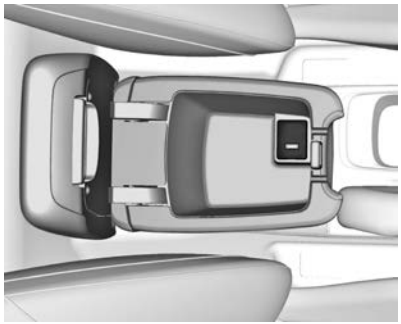
Sportwagon: A 12 volt power outlet is also located on the left side of the load compartment.

With the ignition off or low vehicle battery voltage, the power outlets are deactivated.

Do not exceed the maximum power consumption of 120 watts.

Do not connect any current-delivering accessories, such as electrical charging devices or batteries. Do not damage the outlets by using unsuitable plugs.

USB Port



A USB port for charging devices is located below the console armrest. This USB port also includes a data connection to the infotainment system.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

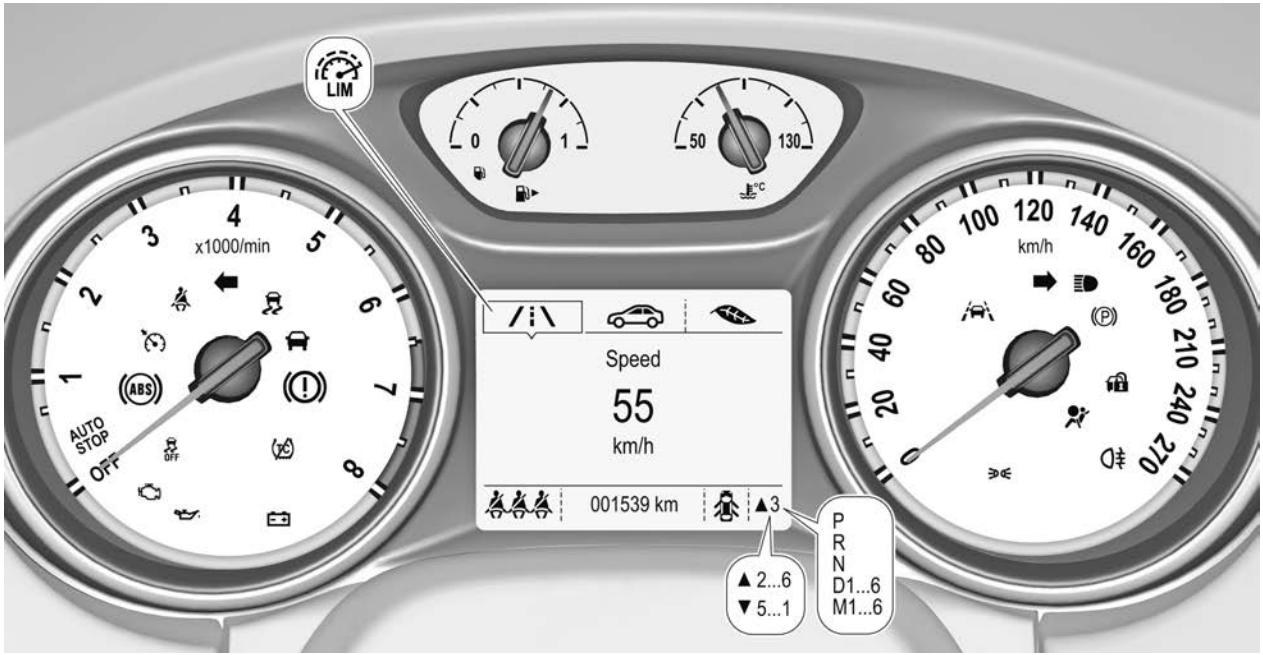
Instrument Cluster

Depending on the model, two instrument clusters are available.

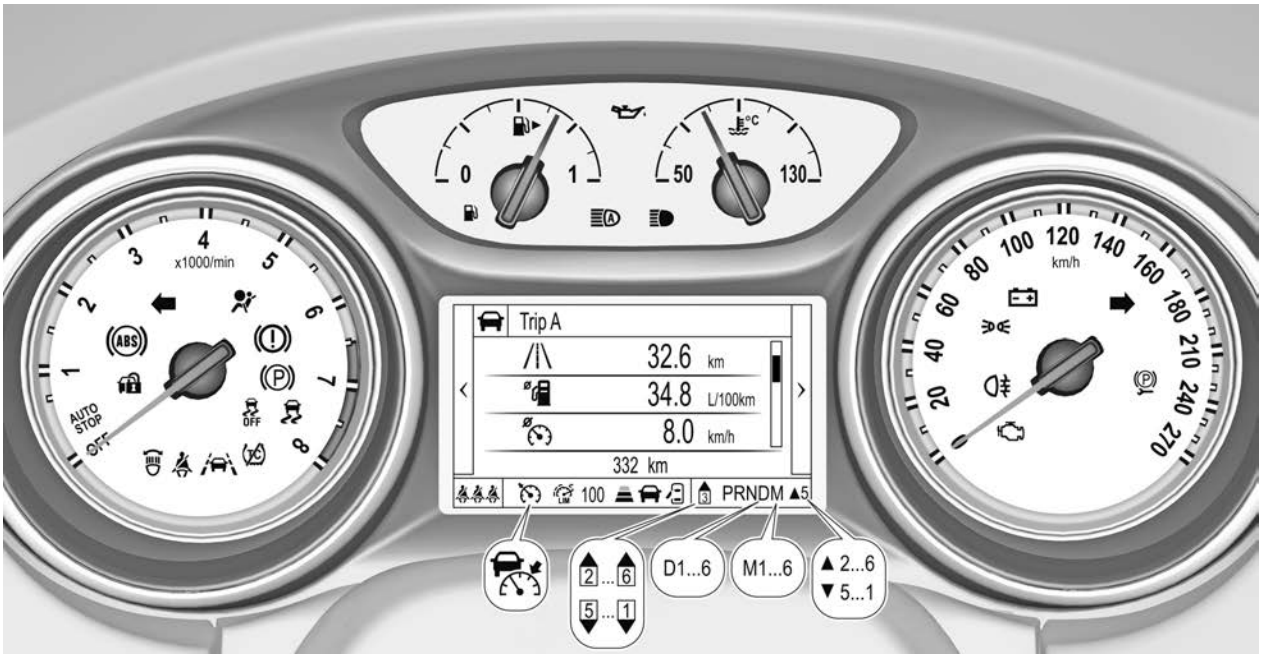
Note

Displays may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.

Type 1


LIM
0
1
50
130
°C
4
x1000/min
5
3
2
6
1
7
8
ABS
AUTO STOP
OFF
OFF
100
120
140
80
160
60
180
40
210
20
240
0
270
km/h
Speed
55
km/h
001539 km
▲3
▲ 2...6
▼ 5...1
P
R
N
D1...6
M1...6

Type 2


0
1
50
130
°C
x1000/min
km/h
Trip A
32.6 km
34.8 L/100km
8.0 km/h
332 km
PRNDM
D1...6
M1...6
▲2...6
▼5...1
AUTO STOP
OFF

Overview

: Adaptive cruise control, see *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *100*

: *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light* ⇨ *100*

: *Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light* ⇨ *96*

: *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *98*

: *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *97*

: *Charging System Light* ⇨ *96*

: *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *100*

: *Door Ajar Light* ⇨ *101*

: *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *97*

: *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light* ⇨ *99*

: *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* ⇨ *99*

: *Engine Oil Pressure Light* ⇨ *99*

: *Follow Distance Indicator Light* ⇨ *98*

: *Rear Fog Light* ⇨ *100*

: *Gear Shifting Light* ⇨ *98*

: *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *100*

: High Beam Assist, see *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *100*

: *Immobiliser Light* ⇨ *100*

: *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ *100*

: *Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light* ⇨ *98*

: *Low Fuel Warning Light* ⇨ *100*

: *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *96*

: *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *95*

: *Service Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *97*

: *Speed Limiter* ⇨ *258*

: *Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light* ⇨ *99*

: *Turn Signal* ⇨ *95*

: *Vehicle Ahead Indicator* ⇨ *98*

Speedometer

Indicates vehicle speed.

Odometer

The total recorded distance is displayed in km.

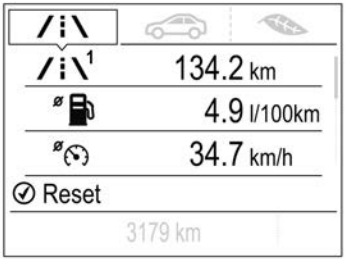
Trip Odometer

The recorded distance since the last reset is displayed on the trip odometer page.

The trip odometer counts up to 9,999 km and then restarts at 0.

Two trip odometer pages are selectable for different trips.

Type 1



Select / ¦ \ by pressing **Menu** on the turn signal lever.

Turn the adjuster wheel on the turn signal lever and select / ¦ \ 1 or / ¦ \ 2.

Each trip odometer page can be reset separately by pressing **SET/ CLR** on the turn signal lever for a few seconds while the menu is displayed.

Type 2

Select **Info** page i on the main menu. Choose page **Trip A** or **Trip B** by pressing ▽ on the steering wheel.

Each trip odometer can be reset separately when the ignition is on: Select the page, press ▷.

Confirm by pressing ✓.

Tachometer

Displays the engine speed. As much as possible, drive with a low engine speed range for each gear.

Caution
If the needle is in the red warning zone, the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded. The engine is at risk. Reduce engine speed.

Fuel Gauge

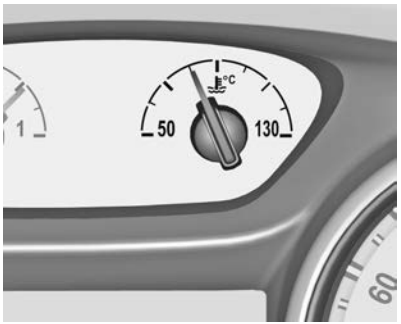
Displays the fuel level within the fuel tank.

The arrow indicates the vehicle side where the fuel filler door is located.

illuminates if the fuel level is low. Refuel immediately if it flashes. Never run the fuel tank dry.

Because of fuel remaining in the tank, the top-up quantity may be less than the specified fuel tank capacity.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



Displays the engine coolant temperature.

50° : engine operating temperature not yet reached

90° (central area) : normal operating temperature

130° : temperature too high

Note

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, idle the engine and check the coolant level. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *297*.

Service Display

The engine oil life system informs you when to change the engine oil and filter. Based on driving conditions, the interval at which an engine oil and filter change will be indicated can vary considerably.

The remaining oil life menu is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *101*.

To view the remaining oil life.

For vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever:

- Select the screen by pressing **MENU** on the turn signal lever.
- Turn the adjuster wheel to select the Remaining Oil Life page.

For vehicles with steering wheel control switches:

- If required, navigate to the Info page by pressing ◁ on the steering wheel, scroll using ▽ and confirm by pressing ✓.
- Press ▽ to select the Remaining Oil Life page.

Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains.

Reset

The system must be reset every time the engine oil is changed to allow correct functionality. Seek the assistance of your dealer.

For vehicles with MENU button on the turn signal lever:

- With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press **SET/CLR** on the turn signal lever for several seconds to reset.

  The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

For vehicles with steering wheel control switches:

- With the Remaining Oil Life page displayed, press ▷ on the steering wheel to open the sub-folder.
- Select **Reset** and confirm by pressing ✓ for several seconds.

  The ignition must be switched on but engine not running.

Next Service

When the system has calculated that the engine oil is approaching the end of its life, Change Engine Oil Soon appears in the Driver Information Centre. Have the engine oil and filter changed within one week or 1000 km (whichever occurs first).

It is possible that if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate an oil change is necessary for a longer period than that shown in the Maintenance schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the Maintenance schedule outlined in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Turn Signal

⇦⇨ flashes green.

A turn signal or the hazard warning flashers are activated.

Rapid flashing: Failure of a turn signal bulb or associated fuse, failure of a turn signal light on a trailer.

See *Bulb Replacement* ⇨ *302*, *Fuses* ⇨ *312*, *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *118*.

Seat Belt Reminders

Front Seats

for the driver's seat illuminates or flashes red in the instrument cluster.

$_2$ for front passenger's seat illuminates or flashes red in the roof console, when the seat is occupied.

- Illuminates: After the ignition has been turned on until the seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes: After having started the engine for a maximum of 100 seconds until the seat belt is fastened.

Rear Seats

Type 1:

illuminates or flashes white or grey in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

- Illuminates white: Seat belt is unfastened.
- Illuminates grey: Seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes white or grey: Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

Type 2:

illuminates green or grey or flashes yellow in the Driver Information Centre, after having started the engine.

- Illuminates grey: Seat belt is unfastened.
- Illuminates green: Seat belt is fastened.
- Flashes yellow: Fastened seat belt has been unfastened.

See *Three-Point Seat Belt* ⇨ *58*.

Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner Light

illuminates red.

When the ignition is switched on, the indicator illuminates for approx. four seconds. If it does not illuminate, does not go out after four seconds or illuminates whilst driving, there is a fault in the airbag system. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

See *Airbag System* ⇨ *60*.

Charging System Light

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

If it illuminates when the engine is running, stop and turn the engine off. The vehicle's battery is not charging. Engine cooling may be interrupted and the brake servo unit may cease to be effective.

Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates When the Engine is Running

A fault has been detected in the emission control system. The permitted emission limits may be exceeded.

Flashes When the Engine is Running

A fault that could lead to catalytic converter damage has been detected. Ease up on the accelerator until the flashing stops. Seek the assistance of a dealer immediately.

Caution

If the vehicle is driven while this light is on, the emission controls might not operate correctly, the vehicle's fuel economy may increase, and the engine might not run smoothly. This may lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to illuminate. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Brake System Warning Light

(!) illuminates red.

The brake fluid level is too low.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light

(P) illuminates or flashes red.

Illuminates

The electric parking brake is applied.

Flashes

The electric parking brake is not fully applied or released. Press the brake pedal and attempt to reset the system by first releasing then applying the electric parking brake.

If (P) keeps flashing, do not drive and seek the assistance of a dealer.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *239*.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light

(P) illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The electric parking brake is operating with degraded performance.

Flashes

The electric parking brake is in service mode. Stop the vehicle, apply and release the electric parking brake to reset.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *239*.

⚠ Warning

Have the cause of the fault remedied immediately. Avoid parking on inclines until the cause of the fault has been rectified.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light

(ABS) illuminates yellow.

Illuminates for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on. The system is ready for operation when the control indicator extinguishes.

If (ABS) does not go out after a few seconds, or if it illuminates while driving, there is a fault in the ABS. The brake system remains operational but without ABS regulation.

See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *238*.

Gear Shifting Light

▲ or ▼ with the number of a higher or lower gear is indicated when shifting up or down is recommended to save fuel.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light

illuminates green or yellow, or flashes yellow.

Illuminates Green

The system is switched on and ready to operate.

Illuminates Yellow

The system is approaching a detected lane marking without the turn signal being used in that direction.

Flashes Yellow

The system recognises that the vehicle has departed significantly from the lane.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *276*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator

illuminates green or yellow.

Illuminates Green

A vehicle ahead is detected in the same lane.

Illuminates Yellow

The distance to a preceding moving vehicle has become too small, or when approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *268*, *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *260*.

Follow Distance Indicator Light

indicates the timing sensitivity for the Following Distance alert setting for the Forward Collision alert.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *268*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light

illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator/Warning Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault in the system is detected. Continued driving is possible. However, driving stability may deteriorate, depending on the road surface conditions. Have the cause of the fault remedied by a dealer.

Flashes

The system is actively engaged. Engine output may be reduced and the vehicle may be braked automatically to a small degree.

See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *242*, *Traction Control System (TCS)* ⇨ *241*.

Traction Control System (TCS) Off Light

illuminates yellow.

The system is deactivated.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light

illuminates red.

If this illuminates when the engine is running, stop and switch the engine off.

Note

If engine coolant temperature is too high, stop vehicle, idle the engine and check the coolant level. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *297*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

illuminates red.

Illuminates when the ignition is turned on and extinguishes shortly after the engine starts.

Illuminates When the Engine is Running

Caution
Engine damage may result if you keep driving. Do not run the engine. If the oil level is normal, have the system checked by your dealer.

If illuminates while driving, do the following.

1. Move out of the flow of traffic as quickly as possible without impeding other vehicles and stop the vehicle in a safe location.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Check the engine oil level. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *294*.

   If required, seek the assistance of a dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

The fuel level in the fuel tank is low. Refill as soon as possible.

Flashes

Fuel very low. Refuel immediately. Never run the tank dry.

See *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *280*.

Immobiliser Light

flashes yellow.

There is a fault in the immobiliser system. The engine cannot be started.

See *Immobiliser* ⇨ *41*.

High-Beam On Light

illuminates blue.

Illuminates when high beam is on or during a headlight flash.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *113*.

High Beam Assist

illuminates green.

The high beam assist is activated.

See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *114*.

Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light

illuminates or flashes yellow.

Illuminates

A fault is detected in the system. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Flashes

The system is switched to symmetrical low beam. The indicator flashes for approx. four seconds after the ignition is switched on as a reminder for symmetrical headlights.

See *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *114*.

Rear Fog Light

illuminates yellow.

The rear fog lamp is on.

See *Rear Fog Lights* ⇨ *118*.

Lamps On Reminder

illuminates green.

The exterior lights are on.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *112*.

Cruise Control Light

illuminates white or green.

Illuminates White

The system is on.

Illuminates Green

Cruise control is active. The set speed is indicated in the Driver Information Centre.

See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *256*.

Adaptive Cruise Control

illuminates in the Driver Information Centre.

Illuminates White

The system is on.

Illuminates Green

Adaptive cruise control is active.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *260*.

Door Ajar Light

illuminates red.

A door or the tailgate is open.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The Driver Information Centre (DIC) is located in the instrument cluster. Two DICs are available depending on the vehicle model.

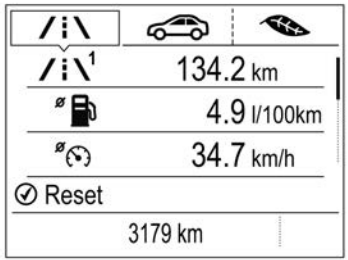
The following functions may be available in the DIC.

Note

The following describes possible options. Some may not be available in your vehicle.

- Odometer and trip odometer
- Vehicle information and settings
- Trip/Fuel information
- Driving economy information
- Vehicle and warning messages
- Audio and infotainment information
- Phone information.
- Navigation information

Type 1



Main menu symbols are indicated in the top line of the display:

: Trip/Fuel Information

: Vehicle Information

: ECO Information

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or when it is at a standstill. Some functions are only available when the vehicle is being driven.

Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the turn signal lever.

Press **MENU** to switch between the main menus or to return from a submenu to the next higher menu level.

Turn the adjuster band to select a submenu of the main menu or to set a numeric value.

Press **SET/CLR** to select and confirm a function.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre as required. Confirm messages by pressing **SET/CLR**. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *106*.

The following lists contain possible menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Some functions are symbolised.

Trip/Fuel Information Menu (/ ⋮ \)

- Digital Speed
- Trip (1 or 2)

  Average Fuel Consumption (1 or 2)

  Average Speed (1 or 2)
- Fuel

  Fuel Economy

  Fuel Range
- Timer

Digital Speed : Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

Trip (1 or 2) : Trip odometer: Displays the current distance since last reset. The trip odometer counts up to a distance of 9,999 km then restarts at 0.

Average Fuel Consumption: Displays average consumption for the current Trip. The measurement can be reset at any time and starts with a default value.

Average Speed: Displays average speed for the current Trip. The measurement can be reset at any time.

To reset, press **SET/CLR** for a few seconds.

Fuel : Fuel Economy: Displays the instantaneous consumption and estimated fuel range until empty.

Fuel Range: The range is calculated from the current fuel tank level and current consumption. The display shows average values. After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

Timer : To start, stop and reset press **SET/CLR**.

Vehicle Information Menu (🚗)

- Remaining Oil Life
- Speed Warning

Remaining Oil Life : Indicates an estimate of the oil's useful life. Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains. See *Service Display* ⇨ *94*.

Speed Warning : The speed warning display allows you to set a speed that you do not want to exceed.

To set the speed warning, press **SET/CLR** while the page is displayed.

ECO Information Menu (🍃)

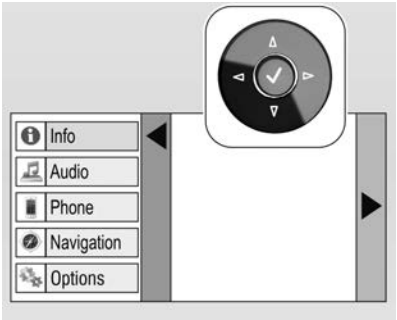
- Fuel Economy
- Economy Trend
- ECO Index

Fuel Economy : Displays instantaneous, average and best fuel consumption over a specified distance. To change press **SET/CLR**.

Economy Trend : Displays the average consumption usage over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption.

Economy (ECO) Index : The current fuel consumption is indicated on an economical scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area. The more segments filled, the higher the fuel consumption. The average consumption value is indicated simultaneously.

Type 2



Main menus are displayed in a side window:

Info : Trip/fuel information.

Audio : Audio information.

Phone : Phone information.

Navigation : Navigation information.

Options : Information page items and vehicle speed warning.

Some of the displayed functions differ when the vehicle is being driven or when it is at a standstill. Some functions are only active when the vehicle is being driven.

Selecting Menus and Functions

The menus and functions can be selected via the buttons on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

Press ◁ to open a main menu page. Select a main menu page with ▽ or △. Confirm a main menu page with ✓.

Once a main menu page is selected, press ▽ or △ to scroll through the sub-pages.

If available, press ▷ to open an options folder of the selected sub-page. Press ▽ or △ to select functions or to set a numeric value, if required.

Press ✓ to select and confirm a function.

Once a main menu page is selected, this selection remains stored until another main menu page is selected. Sub-pages are changed by pressing ▽ or △.

Vehicle and service messages are popped up in the Driver Information Centre as required. Confirm messages by pressing ✓. See *Vehicle Messages* ⇨ *106*.

The following lists contain possible Menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Some functions are symbolised.

Information Menu (i Info)

- Digital Speed
- Trip (A or B)

  Average Fuel Consumption

  Average Speed
- Fuel Information

  Fuel Range

  Fuel Economy
- Oil Life
- Fuel Economy
- Timer
- Follow Distance
- Eco Statistics
- Economy Index

Digital Speed : Digital display of the instantaneous speed.

Trip (A or B) : Trip odometer: Displays the current distance since last reset. The trip odometer counts up to a distance of 9,999 km then restarts at 0.

Average Fuel Consumption: Displays average consumption for the current Trip.

Average Speed: Displays average speed for the current Trip.

Trip page A or B can be reset while the respective display is active. To reset: press ▷ and confirm with ✓.

Fuel Information : Fuel Range: Calculated from current fuel tank level and current consumption. The display shows average values. After refuelling, the range is updated automatically after a brief delay.

Instantaneous Fuel Economy: Displays the instantaneous consumption. The number will continuously change according to current driving conditions.

Oil Life : Indicates an estimate of the oil's useful life. Remaining oil life duration is indicated as a percentage, so if 100% is displayed that means 100% of the current oil life remains. See *Service Display* ⇨ *94*.

Fuel Economy : Displays instantaneous, average and best fuel consumption over a distance of 50, 100 or 500 km. The distance can be changed and the Best score reset. Press ▷ and select the desired distance or Reset.

Timer : To start or stop press ✓. To reset, press ▷ and confirm Reset.

Follow Distance : Displays the distance in seconds to a preceding moving vehicle. If adaptive cruise control is active (if equipped), this page shows the following distance setting instead. See *Following Distance Indication System* ⇨ *270*.

ECO Statistics : Displays the average fuel consumption over a distance of 50 km. Filled segments display the consumption in 5 km steps and shows the effect of topography or driving behaviour on fuel consumption. To reset, press ▷ and confirm Reset.

Economy Index : The current fuel consumption is indicated on an economical scale. For economical driving, adapt driving style to keep the filled segments within the ECO area. The more the bubble moves to the right, the higher the fuel consumption. The average consumption value also is indicated.

Audio Menu

The audio menu enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source.

See *Operation* ⇨ *128* or *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Phone Menu

The phone menu enables managing and performing of phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating handsfree phoning.

See *Hands-Free Phone* ⇨ *149* or *Hands-Free Phone* ⇨ *204*.

Navigation Menu

The navigation menu enables route guidance.

See *Navigation System Overview* ⇨ *177*.

Options (⚙)

The following list contains all possible vehicle information menu pages. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle. Depending on the display some functions are symbolised.

- Info Pages
- Speed Warning

Info Pages : Press ▷ while Info pages is displayed. A list of all items available in the Info i menu is displayed. Scroll down the list and select the functions to be displayed in the Info menu by pressing ✓.

Currently selected pages have a ✓ in a check-box. Available functions not currently displayed have a blank check-box. See the Info i Menu above.

Speed Warning : The speed warning display allows you to set a notification if a certain speed is exceeded. To set press ✓ to turn on. To change the set speed, press ▷ while the page is displayed. Press ▽ or △ to adjust the value. Press ✓ to set the speed. Once the speed is set, this feature can be turned off by pressing ✓ while viewing this page.

If the selected speed limit is exceeded, a pop-up warning is displayed with a chime.

Vehicle Messages

Messages are indicated in the Driver Information Centre, in some cases together with a warning and signal buzzer.

On vehicles with a MENU button in the turn signal lever, press **SET/ CLR** on the turn signal lever to confirm a message.

On vehicles with steering wheel controls, press ✓ to confirm a message.

Vehicle and Service Messages

The vehicle messages are displayed as text. Follow the instructions given in the messages.

Messages in the Infotainment Display

Some important messages may appear additionally in the infotainment system display. Press the multifunction knob to confirm a message. Some messages only pop up for a few seconds.

Warning Chimes

When Starting the Engine or Whilst Driving

Only one warning will sound at a time. The warning for a not-fastened seat belt has priority over any other warning. Depending on vehicle model, warnings may sound:

- If a seat belt is not fastened.
- If a door or the tailgate is not fully closed when starting off.
- If a certain speed is exceeded with the parking brake applied.
- If the adaptive cruise control deactivates automatically.
- If approaching a vehicle ahead too closely.
- If a programmed speed or speed limit is exceeded.
- If a warning message appears in the Driver Information Centre.
- If the RKE transmitter is not in the passenger compartment.
- If the parking assist detects an object.
- If an unintended lane change occurs.

When the Vehicle is Parked and/or the Driver's Door is Opened

- With exterior lights on.

During an Autostop

- If the driver's door is opened.
- If any condition for an Autostop is not fulfilled.

Battery Voltage and Charging Messages

When the vehicle battery voltage is running low, a warning message will appear in the Driver Information Centre.

1. Switch off any electricity consumers that are not required for a safe ride such as seat heating, heated rear window or other power consumers.

2. Charge the vehicle battery by driving continuously for a while or by using a charging device.

The warning message will disappear after the engine has been started twice without a voltage drop. If the vehicle battery cannot be recharged, have the cause of the fault remedied by a dealer.

Vehicle Personalisation

The behaviour of some vehicle functions can be personalised by changing settings in the Infotainment system.

Some of the personal settings for different drivers can be memorised individually for each vehicle key.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *23*.

Note

- Depending on vehicle model and options, some functions described below may not be available.
- Some functions are only displayed or active when the engine is running.

MyLink Infotainment System

Press ⌂, select **SETTINGS** and then **Vehicle** on the touchscreen.

Note

For a description of other Settings menu items see *Settings* ⇨ *151*.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed.

Collision / Detection Systems

- **Park Assist** : Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without a towbar.

- **Forward Collision System** : Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the forward collision alert.

Comfort and Convenience

- **Chime Volume** : Changes the volume of warning chimes.
- **Personalisation By Driver** : Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
- **Rain Sense Wipers** : Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with the rain sensor.
- **Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear** : Activates or deactivates automatic operation of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

Lighting

- **Vehicle Locator Lights** : Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.
- **Exit Lighting** : Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of lighting when leaving the vehicle at night.

Power Door Locks

- **Unlocked Door Anti Lock Out** : Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.
- **Auto Door Lock** : Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after turning the ignition on.

Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

- **Remote Unlock Light Feedback** : Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
- **Remote Lock Feedback** : Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.
- **Remote Door Unlock** : Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the RKE transmitter buttons.
- **Relock Remotely Unlocked Doors** : Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.
- **Remote Left in Vehicle Alert** : Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle.
- **Remote Window Operation** : Activates or deactivates open/closing of the power windows with the RKE transmitter.

MyLink with Navigation Infotainment System

Press ⌂, select **SETTINGS** and then **Vehicle** on the touchscreen.

Note

For a description of other Settings menu items see *Settings* ⇨ *208*.

In the corresponding submenus the following settings can be changed.

Climate and Air Quality

- **Auto Fan Speed** : Modifies the cabin airflow level of the climate control system in automatic mode.
- **Auto Demist** : Supports windscreen dehumidification by automatically selecting the necessary settings and automatic air conditioning mode.
- **Auto Rear Demist** : Automatically activates the heated rear window.

Collision / Detection Systems

- **Forward Collision System** : Activates or deactivates and changes the settings of the forward collision alert.
- **Park Assist** : Activates or deactivates the ultrasonic parking assist. Activation is selectable with or without a towbar.
- **Go Notifier** : Activates or deactivates the reminder function of the adaptive cruise control.
- **Side Blind Zone Alert** : Activates or deactivates the side blind zone alert.

Comfort and Convenience

- **Chime Volume** : Changes the volume of warning chimes.
- **Personalisation by Driver** : Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.
- **Rainsense Wipers** : Activates or deactivates automatic wiping with the rain sensor.
- **Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear** : Activates or deactivates automatic operation of the rear window wiper when reverse gear is engaged.

Lighting

- **Vehicle Locator Lights** : Activates or deactivates the entry lighting.
- **Exit Lighting** : Activates or deactivates and changes the duration of lighting when leaving the vehicle at night.
- **Left or Right Hand Traffic** : Changes between lighting for left- or right-hand traffic.

- **Adaptive Forward Lighting** : Changes the function settings of the LED headlights.

Power Door Locks

- **Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout** : Activates or deactivates the door locking function while a door is open.
- **Auto Door Lock** : Activates or deactivates the automatic door locking function after switching on the ignition.

Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

- **Remote Unlock Light Feedback** : Activates or deactivates the hazard warning flasher feedback whilst unlocking.
- **Remote Lock Feedback** : Changes what kind of feedback is given when locking the vehicle.
- **Remote Door Unlock** : Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the RKE transmitter buttons.
- **Relock Remote Unlocked Doors** : Activates or deactivates the automatic relock function after unlocking without opening the vehicle.
- **Remote Window Operation** : Activates or deactivates open/ closing of the power windows with the RKE transmitter.
- **Passive Door Unlock** : Changes the configuration to unlock only the driver's door or the whole vehicle whilst unlocking with the keyless entry function.
- **Passive Door Lock** : Activates or deactivates the passive locking function. This feature locks the vehicle automatically after several seconds if all doors have been closed and a RKE transmitter has been removed from the vehicle.
- **Remote Left in Vehicle Alert** : Activates or deactivates the warning chime when the RKE transmitter remains in the vehicle.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 112
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 113
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 113
Automatic Headlamp System 113
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 114
Headlamp Leveling Control . . . 117
Hazard Warning Flashers 117
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 118
Rear Fog Lights 118
Reverse Lamps 118
Misted Light Covers 118

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 119
Interior Lamps 119
Reading Lamps 120
Sun Visor Lamps 120

Lighting Features
Centre Console Lighting 121
Entry Lighting 121
Exit Lighting 121
Battery Power Protection 121

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls

Turn the light switch:

AUTO : Automatic light control; switches automatically between daytime running lights and headlamps. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *113*.

: Park, tail and rear number plate lamps.

: Headlamps and all park lamps.

Automatic light control is active when the ignition is on.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

Push the turn signal lever to change from low to high beam.

Pull the lever to deactivate high beam.

High beam is indicated by ≡D on the instrument cluster.

Headlamp Flash

To activate the headlamp flash, pull the turn signal lever and release. The headlamps will remain on for as long as the lever is pulled.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) increase visibility of the vehicle during daylight.

When the automatic light control switch is in the **AUTO** position, the DRL are switched on automatically during the daytime when the engine is running. The system switches between daytime running lamps and headlamps automatically, depending on the lighting conditions.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the automatic light control function is turned on (AUTO) and the engine is running, the system switches between daytime running lamps and headlamps automatically. Operation depends on the external lighting conditions and information from the wiper system.

Automatic Headlamp Activation

During poor lighting conditions, the headlamps are switched on. Additionally, the headlights are switched on if the windscreen wipers have been activated for several wipes.

A sensor mounted in the front-centre of the instrument panel detects ambient lighting conditions. Do not cover the sensor, otherwise the headlamps may not operate correctly.

⚠ Warning

The automatic headlamp sensor cannot replace the driver's personal judgement of the prevailing light conditions. For example, the sensor is unable to detect foggy conditions.

In situations such as this, set the lamp switch to ≡D, otherwise your safety and that of other road users could be endangered.

Tunnel Detection

When a tunnel is entered, the headlamps are switched on immediately until lighting conditions return to normal.

Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)

The vehicle may have an Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) system.

The AFL system features headlamps that contain a variety of LEDs which enable the control of different lighting programs.

Light distribution and intensity of the light are variably activated depending on lighting conditions and road type. The vehicle adapts the headlamps automatically to the current diving situation to enable optimal light performance for the driver.

Some functions of the AFL system can be deactivated or activated in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

The following lighting functions are available with the light control switch in the AUTO or ≡D position.

Town Light

Activated automatically at a speed up to approx. 55 km/h and in situations with low exterior ambient light.

The light is wide and symmetrical. The special beam pattern is designed to avoid glare for other road users.

Country Light

Activated automatically at a speed above approx. 55 km/h when driving in rural areas.

The illumination of the current lane and the side of the road is improved, reducing glare to oncoming and preceding vehicles.

Curve Light

Particular LEDs, based on steering angle and speed, are additionally activated to improve lighting in curves.

This function is activated at speeds from 40 km/h to 70 km/h and reacts to steering angle.

Corner Light

When turning a corner, depending on the steering angle and turn signal lamp direction, particular LEDs are activated which illuminate the direction of travel.

It is activated up to a speed of 40 km/h.

Reverse Parking Function

To assist the driver's orientation when parking, both corner lamps and reverse lamps illuminate when the headlamps are on and reverse gear is engaged.

They remain illuminated for a short time after disengaging reverse gear or until driving faster than 7 km/h in a forward gear.

High Beam Assist

This feature allows the high beam to function as the main driving light at night.

The camera in the windscreen detects the lights of oncoming or preceding vehicles. Each LED in the headlamps on the right or left side can be activated or faded out according to the traffic situation. This gives the best light distribution without glare for other road users.

Once activated, high beam assist remains active and switches high beam on and off depending on surrounding conditions.

The current setting of the high beam assist will remain after the ignition is switched on again.

High beam assist includes a special freeway mode.

When driving faster than 115 km/h on freeways, the light beam becomes smaller to avoid glare to oncoming traffic. When following vehicles ahead or passing, mirror glare for these vehicles is reduced.

⚠ Warning

It is the responsibility of the driver to always comply with local posted speed limits.

Activation

Activate high beam assist by pressing ≣Ⓐ once.

High beam is switched on automatically at a speed above 50 km/h. High beam is switched off at a speed below 35 km/h, but high beam assist remains active.

The green indicator ≣Ⓐ illuminates continuously in the instrument cluster when high beam assist is activated. The blue indicator ≣● illuminates when high beam is on.

Pushing the turn signal indicator lever once switches on manual high beam without high beam assist.

High beam assist switches automatically to low beam when:

- Driving in urban areas.
- The camera detects heavy fog.

If there are no restrictions detected, the system switches back to high beam.

Deactivation

If high beam assist is active and high beam is on, press ≣Ⓐ once or pull indicator lever once to deactivate high beam assist.

If high beam assist is active and high beam is off, press ≣Ⓐ once to deactivate high beam assist.

Pushing the turn signal indicator lever to activate manual high beam will also deactivate high beam assist.

Headlamp Flash in Conjunction with High Beam Assist

Headlamp flash by pulling the turn signal indicator lever once will not deactivate high beam assist when high beam is off.

Headlamp flash by pulling the turn signal indicator lever once deactivates high beam assist when high beam is on.

Dynamic Automatic Headlamp Levelling

To prevent glare to oncoming traffic, headlamp levelling is automatically adjusted based on vehicle inclination information measured by the front and rear axle, acceleration or deceleration and vehicle speed.

Faults

If the system detects a failure in the AFL system, it selects a preset position to avoid glare to oncoming traffic.

A warning is displayed in the driver information centre.

Headlamp Leveling Control

If equipped, the headlamp beam level can be adjusted according to vehicle load and to prevent glare to oncoming drivers.

Turn to the desired position.

0 : Front seats occupied.

1 : All seats occupied.

2 : All seats occupied and load compartment laden.

3 : Driver's seat occupied and load compartment laden.

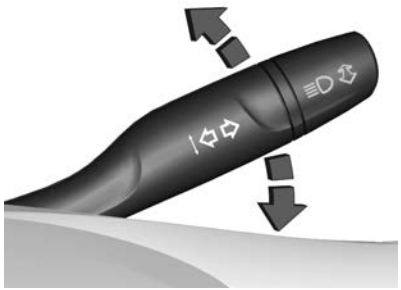
For vehicles with adaptive forward lighting system, refer to Dynamic Automatic Headlight levelling, see *Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL)* ⇨ *114*.

Hazard Warning Flashers

Operated by pressing ⚠.

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the hazard warning flashers are activated automatically.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Lever up : Left turn signal

Lever down : Right turn signal

A resistance point can be felt when moving the turn signal lever. Constant flashing is activated when the lever is moved beyond the resistance point.

It is deactivated when the steering wheel is turned in the opposite direction, or the lever is manually returned to the neutral position.

Temporary flashing is activated by holding the lever just before the resistance point. The turn signal lights will flash until the lever is released.

To activate three flashes automatically, tap the lever briefly without passing the resistance point. If a trailer is connected, the turn signal lights flash six times and tone frequency changes.

Rear Fog Lights

The vehicle has one rear fog lamp.

Operated by pressing .

When the light control switch is in the AUTO position, turning on the rear fog lamp will turn the headlamps on automatically.

The rear fog lamp should only be used in very bad visibility conditions such as fog, snow or heavy rain.

Reverse Lamps

The reverse lamps Illuminate when the ignition is on and reverse gear is selected.

Misted Light Covers

The inside of a light housing may mist-up briefly in poor, wet and cold weather conditions, in heavy rain or after washing. The mist disappears quickly by itself. To help switch on the headlights.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

Brightness of the following lights can be adjusted.

They illuminate when the light control switch is in the AUTO position and the light sensor detects night conditions, or in ☼ or ≡D positions.

- Instrument panel illumination
- Infotainment display
- Illuminated switches and operation elements

Turn and hold ☼ until the desired brightness is obtained.

Interior Lamps

During entry and exit of the vehicle, the front and rear courtesy lights automatically turn on and then off after a delay.

Note

In the event of an accident with airbag deployment, the courtesy lights are turned on automatically.

Front Courtesy Light

🚪 **:** Automatic turning on and off when a door is opened or closed.

☀ **:** Press to turn the interior lights on manually.

☀ **:** Press to turn the interior lights off manually.

Rear Courtesy Lights

Illuminate in conjunction with the front courtesy light.

Reading Lamps

Front

Rear

The front and rear reading lights are operated by pressing or in the courtesy light.

Sun Visor Lamps

Illuminates when the cover is opened.

Lighting Features

Centre Console Lighting

A spotlight incorporated in the front interior lights illuminates when the headlights are turned on.

Entry Lighting

Depending on vehicle model, the following lights are turned on for a short time when unlocking the vehicle with the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter:

- Headlights.
- Tail lamps.
- Number plate lights.
- Instrument panel lights.
- Interior lights.

Some functions are only operable when it is dark outside to facilitate locating the vehicle.

The lighting turns off immediately when the ignition is turned on.

This function can be activated or deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

The settings can be saved for the RKE transmitter being used. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *23*.

The following lights will additionally switch on when the driver's door is opened:

- Illumination of some switches.
- Driver information centre.
- Door pocket lights.

Exit Lighting

Depending on vehicle model, the following lights will turn on when the ignition is turned off:

- Interior lights.
- Instrument panel lights.

They will switch off automatically after a delay. This function works only in the dark.

Interior lighting is activated if the driver's door is opened during this time.

Path Lighting

Headlights, tail lamps and number plate lights illuminate the surrounding area for an adjustable time after leaving the vehicle.

Activation

Path lighting is activated, when the ignition is turned off and the driver's door is opened.

If the driver's door is not closed, the path lights turn off after two minutes.

Path lighting can be activated, deactivated or the duration can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

The settings can be saved for the RKE transmitter being used. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *23*.

Battery Power Protection

This function guarantees longest vehicle battery life via an alternator with controllable power output and optimised power distribution.

To prevent discharge of the vehicle battery when driving, the following systems are reduced automatically in two stages and finally switched off:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated mirrors.
- Heated seats.
- Fan.

In the second stage, a message confirming the activation of the vehicle battery discharge protection will be displayed in the driver information centre.

Automatic Lights Off

To prevent discharge of the vehicle's battery when the ignition is off, some interior lights are turned off automatically after a period of time.

Infotainment System

MyLink

Introduction
Introduction 124
Theft-Deterrent Feature 125
Overview 126
Operation 128

Radio
AM-FM-DAB Radio 133

Audio Players
USB 137
Bluetooth Audio 142

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition 144

Phone
Bluetooth 145
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 148
Hands-Free Phone 149

Settings
Settings 151

MyLink with Built-in Navigation

Introduction
Introduction 153
Theft-Deterrent Feature 153
Overview 154
Operation 156

Radio
AM-FM-DAB Radio 169

Audio Players
USB 172
Bluetooth Audio 175

Navigation
Navigation System Overview 177
Using the Navigation System 178
Enter Destination 184
Guidance 190

Voice Recognition
Voice Recognition (General Information) 194
Voice Recognition (Usage) . . . 195

Phone
Bluetooth 198
Text Messaging 201
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 203
Hands-Free Phone 204

Settings
Settings 208

Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available for this vehicle:

- MyLink (without built-in navigation).
- MyLink with Built-in Navigation.

The following pages describe the features and operation of the MyLink system. For vehicles fitted with the MyLink with Built-in Navigation system, see *Introduction* ⇨ *153*.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The MyLink infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation and infotainment display controls.
- Set up the audio by presetting favourite stations and tone.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command using Bluetooth® phone capability.

To play the infotainment system with the ignition off, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *228*.

General Information

The infotainment system provides infotainment in your car, using the latest technology.

The radio can be easily used by registering up to 25 FM or AM stations with the Preset function.

The infotainment system can play USB storage devices, smartphones or MP3 players.

Using the phone projection function, you can operate specific applications on your smartphone via the infotainment system.

The Bluetooth phone connection function allows for the use of wireless hands-free phone calls, as well as a phone music player.

- The "Overview" section provides a simple overview of the infotainment system's functions and summary of all regulatory devices.
- The "Operation" section explains the basic controls for the infotainment system.

- Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.
- Some of the radio features may be limited when ignition is off.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The Infotainment system has an electronic security system to prevent theft.

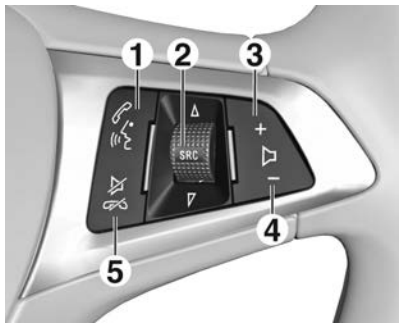
Therefore, the infotainment system will only function in the vehicle in which it was first installed and cannot be used in another vehicle.

Overview

Control Panel

1. Display / Touchscreen.
2. Home menu. Touchscreen buttons for:
   - Audio: Audio functions.
   - Gallery: Picture and movie functions.
   - Phone: Mobile phone functions.
   - Projection: Phone projection (Apple CarPlay / Android Auto).
   - Settings: System settings.
3. Time, Date and Outside temperature.
4. Phone :
   - Press to access the Phone menu. (If there is no connected phone, the display will show the Device Management menu to allow you to connect a previously paired phone or establish a new Bluetooth enabled phone connection). Or, press to open the phone projection function if activated.
   - Press and hold to activate speech recognition.
5. Seek :
   - Press to seek the next radio station or media track.
   - Press and hold to seek up radio stations or fast forward media.
6. Power / Volume:
   - Press and hold to turn the power on/off.
   - Press to turn the mute function on/off.
   - Rotate to adjust the volume.
7. Seek :
   - Press to seek the previous radio station or media track.
   - Press and hold to seek down radio stations or fast rewind media.
8. Home :
   - Press to enter the home menu.
   - Press and hold to open the phone projection (Apple CarPlay / Android Auto).

Steering Wheel Remote Control



1. Call :
   - When there is no connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Executes the Bluetooth device connection.

- When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

  If the connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold to activate the phone's speech recognition mode.

2. SRC (Source):

   Press to change the source, e.g. AM, FM, USB, etc.

   Rotate (▲ / ▼) to select the next or previous:

   - Radio mode: preset radio station.
   - Audio mode: track / chapter / picture.
   - Phone mode: call list entry when the call list is open.

3. Volume + :

   Press **+** to increase the volume.

4. Volume – :

   Press **-** to decrease the volume.

5. Mute/Hang up :

   Press in any music play mode to turn the mute function on and off.

   Press to reject incoming calls, or to finish your current call, or to end speech recognition mode.

Operation

System On/Off

- Press on the control panel to turn the power on. The last function will be executed.
- Press and hold on the control panel to turn the power off. The time and temperature will be shown on the screen.

Note
The time and temperature are displayed when the ignition is on.

Turning On/Off Automatically

When the ignition is in accessory or on, the infotainment system is turned on automatically.

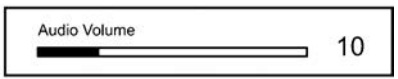
When the ignition is off and the driver's door is opened, the infotainment system is turned off automatically.

Note

If ⏻ is pressed and held when the ignition is off, the infotainment system is turned on for approximately 10 minutes.

Volume Control

Rotate the volume knob on the control panel to adjust the volume. The current sound volume is indicated.



- Using the steering wheel remote control, press + ▷ - to adjust the volume.
- Turning on the infotainment system will set the volume level to its previous selection (when it is less than the maximum starting volume).
- If the volume level is louder than maximum starting volume level when the infotainment system is turned on, the sound level is adjusted automatically to maximum starting volume level.

Speed Compensated Volume

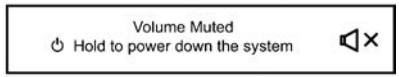
Press ⌂ and then select Settings. Select Radio, scroll through the list and then select Auto Volume.

To adjust the degree of volume adaptation, select one of the options in the list.

- Off: no enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.
- High: maximum enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.

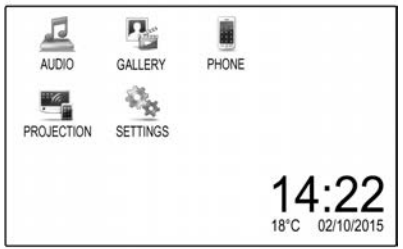
MUTE

Press ⏻ on the control panel to turn the mute function on and off.



Using Home Menu

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel. The Home menu may vary depending on the vehicle option.



2. Touch the desired menu button (icon).

Note

Not all menu icons may be available on your vehicle.

- **Audio** to select AM/ FM/ DAB/USB/ Bluetooth music input.
- **Gallery** to view a picture or movie.
- **Phone** to activate phone features (if connected).
- **Projection** to activate Android Auto or Apple Carplay.

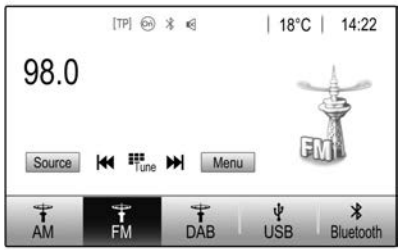
  If a compatible smartphone is already connected to the USB port, the Projection icon will be replaced with Android Auto or Apple Carplay icons.
- **Settings** to enter the system setup menu.

Refer below for further details.

Selecting Functions

Audio

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Audio** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Source** on the screen.



- Touch **AM** to select AM radio.
- Touch **FM** to select FM radio.
- Touch **DAB** to select DAB digital radio.
- Touch **USB** to select USB music.

Note

When an iPod is connected to the USB port, 'USB' changes to 'iPod'. Select iPod to play music on the device.

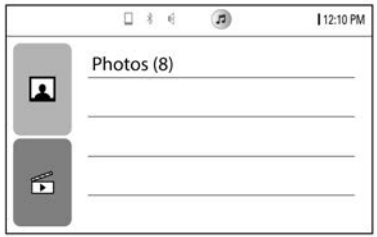
- Touch **Bluetooth** to select Bluetooth music.

Note

- Press ⌂ to return to the Home menu.
- If the playback source (iPod/ USB/ Bluetooth) is not connected to the infotainment system, this function is not available.
- Audio source availability may vary depending on region or vehicle features.
- An additional USB device can be supported by attaching an external USB hub from the single USB port.
- We don't recommend using a USB hub with two iPhone/iPod devices.

Gallery

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Gallery** on the Home menu.



- Touch 👤 to view picture files contained in the USB storage device.
- Touch 🎬 to view movie files contained in the USB storage device.

Note

- Press ⌂ to return to the HOME menu.
- If the playback source (USB (picture) / USB (movie) is not connected to the Infotainment system, this function is not available.

Phone

To operate Bluetooth hands-free function, connect the Bluetooth phone to the Infotainment system.

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Phone** on the Home menu. Or touch 📞 on the control panel or steering wheel control switch.

Note

- Press ⌂ to return to the Home menu.

- If your Bluetooth phone is not connected to the Infotainment system, this function is not available. For details, refer to the “Pairing and connecting Bluetooth” of the “Phone” section.

Projection

The phone projection applications Android Auto and Apple CarPlay display selected apps from your smartphone on the infotainment screen and allow their operation directly via the infotainment controls.

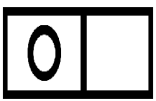
Settings

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.

Note

- An ON setting is displayed as:

An OFF setting is displayed as:



- Press ⌂ to return to the Home menu.

Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the screen towards the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
6. Press ⌂ to exit edit mode.

Note

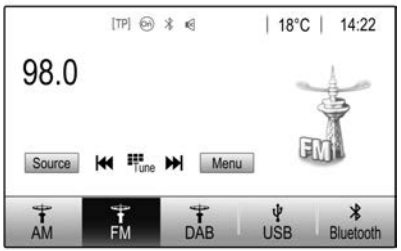
- The Edit Mode exits after 30 seconds of inactivity.
- The maximum number of pages in edit mode is three.

Radio

AM-FM-DAB Radio

Listening to FM/AM/DAB Radio

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Audio** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Source** on the screen.
4. Touch **FM**, **AM** or **DAB** on the screen. The radio band of the most recently listened-to station is displayed.



Note

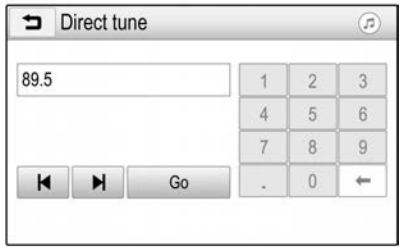
- Press ⌂ to return to the HOME menu.

Searching for Broadcasting Automatically

Touch ⏮ / ⏭ on the control panel to automatically search for an available station with good reception.

Searching for Broadcasting Directly

1. Touch Tune on the screen.
2. Touch the desired frequency.
3. Touch **Go**.



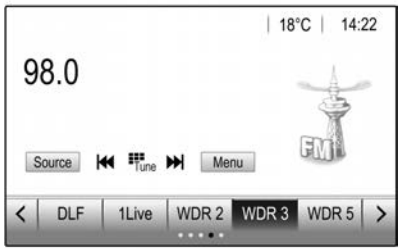
Note

Touching "." between digits is not necessary. The radio will add it automatically at the correct location.

Searching for Broadcasting Using Preset

Saving a PRESET

1. Select the band (FM, AM, DAB) to store a station into.
2. Select the desired station.
3. Touch < / > to select the desired page of saved favourites.



4. Touch and hold any PRESET to save the current radio station to that PRESET on the selected favourites page.
   - Up to 5 favourites pages can be saved, and each page can store up to five radio stations.

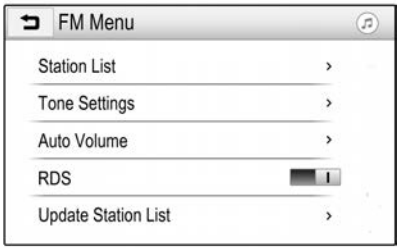
Listening to a PRESET Directly

1. Repeatedly touch < / > to select the desired page of saved favourites.
2. Touch the PRESET to directly listen to the radio station saved to that PRESET.

Using the FM/AM/DAB Menu

General Operation of the Menu

1. Select the desired band (FM, AM, DAB).
2. Touch **Menu** on the radio screen.



3. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
4. Touch ⮌ to return to the previous menu.

Station List

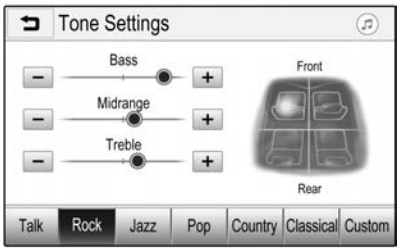
1. From the FM/AM/DAB menu, touch the **Station List** to display the station list.

   The station list information is displayed.
2. Scroll through the list using ▲ / ▼. Tune to the desired station by selecting it.

Tone Settings

From Tone Settings menu, sound features can be set.

1. From the FM/AM/DAB menu, touch the **Tone settings** to enter the sound setup mode. The tone settings menu is displayed.



- Touch -/+ to select the desired sound style manually.
- Bass : Adjust the bass level from −12 to +12.
- Mid (Midrange) : Adjust the midrange level from -12 to +12.
- Treble : Adjust the treble level from −12 to +12.
- Fade : Adjust the front/rear speaker balance by dragging the round cursor up or down over the vehicle interior image.
- Balance : Adjust the left/right speaker balance by dragging the round cursor left or right over the vehicle interior image.
- EQ (Equaliser) : Select or turn off the sound style. (Talk, Rock, Jazz, Pop, Country, Classical, Custom)

2. Touch ⮌.

Auto Volume

When Auto Volume is turned on, the volume will automatically be controlled according to the vehicle speed to offset the noise from the engine and tyres.

1. From the FM/AM/DAB menu, touch the **Auto Volume**.
2. Select the desired option. (Off/Low/Medium-Low/Medium/Medium-High/High)

Radio Data System (RDS)

RDS is a service of FM stations that facilitates the finding of a desired station and its fault-free reception.

Advantages of RDS:

- On the display, the program name of the station appears instead of its frequency.
- During a station search, the infotainment system tunes to RDS stations only.
- Depending on the station that is received, the infotainment system displays additional text that can contain information about the current program, for example.

Setting the RDS function.

1. From the FM menu, select on or off.

Update Station List

1. From the FM/AM/DAB menu, press **Update Station List**. The FM/AM/DAB broadcasting list update will proceed.
2. During the FM/AM/DAB broadcasting list update, touch **Cancel** to stop it from saving changes.

Categories

Radio stations broadcast a code which specifies the type of program transmitted, e.g. news, pop, etc. Category lists allow you to find programs based on the types available

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power/ USB outlet.

If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power/USB outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km.

Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night.

The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception.

When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

DAB

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally. Advantages of DAB include:

- DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.
- With DAB, several radio programs (services) can be broadcast on a single ensemble.
- As long as a given DAB receiver can pick up the signal sent out by a broadcasting station (even if the signal is very weak), sound reproduction is ensured.
- Interference caused by stations that are on nearby frequencies (a phenomenon that is typical of AM and FM reception) does not occur with DAB.
- If the DAB signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings, the reception quality of DAB is improved, whereas AM or FM reception is considerably impaired in such cases.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage can cause interference with the vehicle's radio.

Audio Players

USB

USB Port

A USB port for the connection of external devices is located in the centre console.

Connecting/Disconnecting a Device

Devices such as an MP3 player, USB drive, SD card (via USB connector/adapter) or smartphone can be connected to the USB port.

Up to two USB devices can be connected to the infotainment system at a time.

Note

For the connection of two USB devices, an external USB hub is required.

The infotainment system can play audio files, display picture files or play movie files contained in the USB storage device. When connected to the USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus.

When connecting the device use a genuine connection cable.

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message is displayed and the infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.

To disconnect the USB device, select another function and then remove the USB storage device.

Caution
Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the infotainment system.

USB Auto Launch

By default, the USB audio menu is displayed automatically as soon as a USB device is connected containing music files.

If desired, this function can be deactivated.

Press ⌂ and then select **Settings** to open the settings menu. Select **Radio**, scroll to **USB Auto Launch** and touch the screen button next to the function. To reactivate the function, touch the screen button again.

File Formats and Folders

The maximum capacity of a device supported by the infotainment system amounts to 2500 music files,

2500 picture files, 250 movie files, 2500 folders and 10 stages of folder structure.

Only devices formatted in the FAT16/FAT32 file system are supported.

If there are images included in the audio meta data, these images are displayed on the screen.

Note

Some files may not be played properly. This may be due to a different recording format or the condition of the file. Files from online shops to which Digital Rights Management (DRM) has been applied cannot be played.

The infotainment system can play the following audio, picture and movie files stored on external devices.

Audio Files

The playable audio file formats are: MP3 (MPEG-1 Layer 3, MPEG-2 Layer 3), WMA, ALAC OGG WAF (PCM), AIFF, 3GPP (audio only), Audio Books and LPCM. iPod® and iPhone® devices play ALAC, AIFF, Audio Books and LPCM.

When playing a file with ID3 tag information, the infotainment system can display information, e.g. on the track title and artist.

Picture Files

The displayable picture file formats are: JPG, JPEG, BMP, PNG and GIF.

JPG files must be 64 to 5000 pixels in width and 64 to 5000 pixels in height. BMP, PNG and GIF files must be 64 to 1024 pixels in width and 64 to 1024 pixels in height.

The pictures should not exceed a file size of 1MB.

Movie Files

The playable movie file formats are AVI and MP4.

Playing USB Music Files

Connect the USB device containing the music files to the USB port.

- Once the infotainment system finishes reading the information on the USB storage device, it will be automatically played. (If you set the USB Auto Launch to off in Settings, it will not be automatically played.)
- If a non-readable USB storage device is connected, then an error message will appear and the infotainment system will be automatically switched to the previous audio function.

Note

If the USB storage device is already connected, press ⌂ > **Audio** > **Source** > **USB** to play the USB music files.

Ending Playback

1. Touch **Source**.
2. Select another function by touching the **AM**, **FM**, **DAB**, **USB** or **Bluetooth**.

Note

Before removing the USB storage device, select another function, and then remove the USB storage device.

Pause

Touch ⏸ during playback.

Touch ▶ to resume playback.

Playing the Next File

Touch ⏭ to play the next file.

Playing the Previous File

Touch ⏮ within 5 seconds of playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch ⏮ after 5 seconds of playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Hold down ⏮ / ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast-forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing Files Randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback.

- ⤮ : Plays all files randomly.
- ⤮ : Returns to normal playback.

USB Music Menu

1. Touch **Menu** on the USB music screen.
2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
3. Touch ⮌ to return to the previous menu.

Browse Music

1. From the USB music menu, Touch **Browse Music**.

   The number of relevant songs is displayed by all Playlists/ Artists/Albums/Songs/ Genres/More.
2. Touch the desired music.

Note

The infotainment system recognises playlist files by the case-insensitive extensions ".asx", ".m3u", ".pls", ".wpl", "b4s", and ".xspf".

Tone Settings

From the USB menu, sound features can be adjusted. For details, refer to "Tone settings" in "Using the FM/AM/DAB Menu". See *AM-FM-DAB Radio ⇨ 133*.

Auto Volume

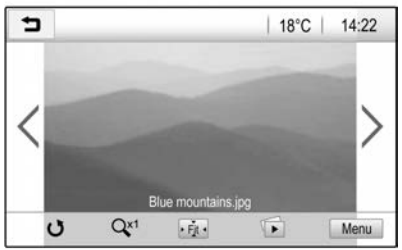
Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the “Auto Volume” in “Using the FM/AM/DAB Menu”. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio ⇨ 133*.

Gallery (Pictures)

The infotainment system can display picture files contained in the USB storage device.

Note

Picture and movie function are not supported for iPhone.



Note

- The following file extensions are supported: '*.jpg', '*.bmp', '*.png', '*.gif' (Animated GIF is not supported.)
- Some files may not operate due to a different format or the condition of the file.

Viewing a Picture

1. Connect the USB storage device to the USB port.

   The picture will be displayed.
2. Touch the screen to hide the control bar. Touch the screen again to show the control bar again, touch ⮌ to return to the previous screen.

Note

- If the USB storage device is already connected, touch ⌂ > **Gallery** > 👤 to view the picture files.
- For your safety, some features are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

Slide Show

From the picture screen, touch 🖻.

- The slide show will be played.
- Touch the screen to cancel the slideshow during slideshow playback.

Previous or Next Picture

Touch < or > to view previous or next picture.

Rotating a Picture

Touch ↺ to rotate the picture.

Enlarging a Picture

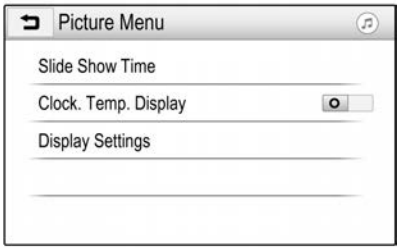
Touch Q¹ to enlarge the picture.

Full Screen

Touch **Fit** to view to full screen. Touch **Fit** again to return to the previous screen.

Picture Menu

1. From the picture screen, touch **MENU**. The USB picture menu is displayed.



2. Touch the desired menu.
   - **Slide Show Time:** Select the slide show interval.
   - **Clock. Temp. Display:** To display the clock and temperature on the full screen, select On or Off.
   - **Display Settings:** Adjust the Brightness and Contrast.
3. After the setting is complete, touch ⮌.

Gallery (Movies)

The Infotainment system can play movie files contained in the USB storage device.

Playing a Movie File

1. Connect the USB storage device containing the movie file to the USB port.
2. Press ⌂ > **Gallery** > ▶ and select a movie file. The movie will be played.

3. Touch the screen to hide the control bar. Touch the screen again to show the control bar again, touch ⮌ to return to the previous screen.

Pause

Touch ⏸ during playback.

Touch ▶ to resume playback.

Playing the Next Movie

Touch ⏭ to play the next movie.

Playing the Previous Movie

Touch ⏮ within 5 seconds of playback time to play the previous movie.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current Movie

Touch ⏮ after 5 seconds of playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

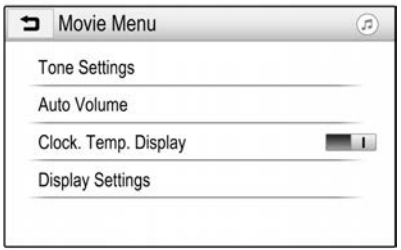
Hold down ⏮ / ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast-forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Full Screen

From the movie screen, touch **Fit** to view full screen. Touch **Fit** again to return to the previous screen.

USB Movie Menu

1. From the movie screen, touch **MENU**. The USB movie menu is displayed.



2. Touch the desired menu.
   - **Tone Settings:** Set the sound feature. For details, refer to “Tone settings” in “Using the FM/AM/DAB Menu”. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *133*.
   - **Auto Volume:** Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the “Auto Volume” in “Using the FM/AM/DAB Menu”. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *133*.
   - **Clock. Temp. Display:** To display the clock and temperature on the full screen, select On or Off.
   - **Display Settings:** Adjust the Brightness and Contrast.
3. After the setting is complete, touch ⮌.

Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired and connected Bluetooth device. For help pairing the device see *Bluetooth* ⇨ *145*.

Before Playing Bluetooth Music

- Bluetooth music can be played through the infotainment system only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- Supported profiles: A2DP, AVRCP.
- Bluetooth music may not be supported depending on the mobile phone or Bluetooth device.
- A musical note icon (♪) will appear on the screen if the Bluetooth device is successfully connected.
- If the Bluetooth is disconnected while playing music, the music is discontinued.
- For Bluetooth music to play, the music must at least be played once from the music player mode of the device.

Playing Bluetooth Music

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Audio** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Source** on the screen.

4. Touch **Bluetooth** to select the connected Bluetooth music play mode.

Note
If the Bluetooth device is not connected, then this function cannot be selected.

Pause

Touch ⏸ during playback. Touch ▶ again to resume playback.

Playing the Next Track

Touch ⏭ to play the next music.

Playing the Previous Track

Touch ⏮ within 2 seconds of playback time to play the previous music.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current Track

Touch ⏮ after 2 seconds of playback time.

Search

Hold down ⏮ or ⏭ to fast forward or rewind.

Playing Music Randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback.

- ⤮ : Plays all files randomly.
- ⤮ : Returns to normal playback.

Note
Some functions may not be supported depending on the mobile phone.

Bluetooth Music Menu

1. Touch **Menu** on the Bluetooth music screen.
2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
3. Touch ⮌ to return to the previous menu.

Browse Music

1. From the Bluetooth music menu, Touch **Browse Music**. The number of relevant songs is displayed by all Playlists/ Artists/Albums/Songs/Genres/ More. The items may vary depending on the mobile phone.
2. Touch the desired music.

Note
This function may not be supported depending on the mobile phone.

Tone Settings

From the Bluetooth music menu, sound features can be adjusted. For details, refer to “Tone settings” in “Using the FM/AM/DAB Menu”. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio ⇨ 133*.

Auto Volume

Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the “Auto Volume” in “Using the FM/AM/DAB Menu”. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio ⇨ 133*.

Caution Playing Bluetooth Music

- Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.
- It takes some time to transmit data from the mobile phone to the infotainment system. The infotainment system outputs the audio from the Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.
- If the Bluetooth device is not in the idle screen mode, it may not automatically play even though it is in Bluetooth music play mode.
- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the mobile phone in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the mobile phone's options, this order to play/stop may some take time to activate.
- If Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, check to see if the mobile phone is in the idle screen mode.
- Sometimes, sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.

Voice Recognition

General Information

The voice pass-thru application of the infotainment system allows access to the voice recognition commands on your smartphone.

See your smartphone manufacturer's operating instructions to find out whether your smartphone supports this feature. In order to use the voice pass-thru application, the smartphone must be connected to the infotainment system via a USB cable or Bluetooth.

Usage

Activating Voice Recognition

Press and hold ✆ on the control panel or 🎤 on the steering wheel to start a speech recognition session. A voice command message is displayed.

As soon as a beep is heard, you can say a command. For information on the commands supported, see the operating instructions for your smartphone.

Adjusting the volume of voice prompts Turn ⏻ on the control panel or press + / - on the right side of the steering wheel to increase or decrease the volume of voice prompts.

Deactivating Speech Recognition

Press on the steering wheel. The voice command message disappears and the speech recognition session is ended.

Phone

Bluetooth

General Information

The Phone portal allows you to have mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle speakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the infotainment system in the vehicle.

To use the phone portal, the mobile phone must be connected to the infotainment system via Bluetooth®.

Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You can find further information on this in the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

⚠ Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Understanding Bluetooth Wireless Technology

Bluetooth wireless technology establishes a wireless link between two devices supported with Bluetooth.

Terminology:

- **Pairing:** To create a secure link between the infotainment system and a Bluetooth device. Multiple devices can be paired and retained in the infotainment system.
- **Connection:** A previously paired device can be connected which enables the Bluetooth functions to be used, such as hands-free phone, audio, etc. One device can be connected at a time.

After the initial pairing, the device can connect automatically to the infotainment system each time you turn them on.

Bluetooth allows wireless transmission of information within close range by using 2.45 GHz frequency short-distance wireless telecommunication technologies.

Note

- There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.
- Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.
- Any inquiries regarding your phone's Bluetooth functionality, refer to the device manual.

Pairing and Connecting Bluetooth

To use the Bluetooth feature, make sure the Bluetooth on your device is turned on and your device is in discoverable mode. Refer to the user guide for the Bluetooth device.

With No Currently Paired Device

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Phone** on the Home menu.

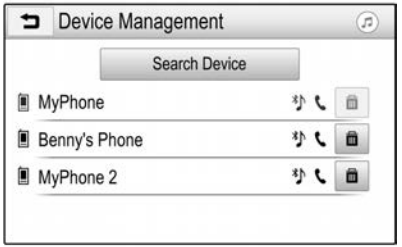
   Or touch ✆ on the control panel.

   Or touch ✆ on the steering wheel remote control.
3. Touch Search Device to search for Bluetooth phones.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
   - If the SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) is supported, touch Yes or Pair on the pop-up screen of the your Bluetooth device and infotainment system.
   - If SSP is not supported, input the PIN code on your Bluetooth device as shown on the screen.
5. When your Bluetooth device and infotainment system is successfully paired, the Phone screen is displayed on the infotainment system.

If the connection fails, failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

With a Currently Paired Device

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.



4. Touch the device you wish to pair from the “Device Management” screen, and then follow step 6. To add a device not in the list, touch **Search Device**.
5. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
   - If the SSP is supported, touch **Yes** or **Pair** on the pop-up screen of the your Bluetooth device and infotainment system.
   - If SSP is not supported, input the PIN code on your Bluetooth device as shown on the screen.
6. When your Bluetooth device and the infotainment system is successfully paired, ♪ / ✆ is displayed on the Device Management screen.
   - The ✆ mark indicates that only the hands-free function is enabled.
   - The ♪ mark indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Note

- If supported by the phone, the phone book is automatically downloaded when your Bluetooth phone is successfully paired with the infotainment system.

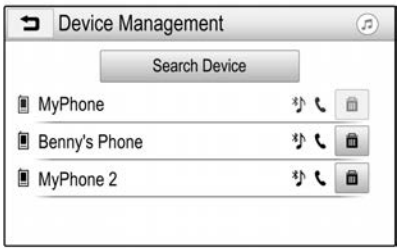
  If it is not automatically downloaded, proceed with the phone book download on your phone. It is recommended that

you always accept the phone book request during the initial pairing of the phone.

- The infotainment system can pair up to ten Bluetooth devices.
- If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.
- If the Phone book lists are more than 5000, the infotainment system does not guarantee proper listing of remaining Phone book entries.
- Depending on the Phone book entries, pairing time may vary.

Checking/Changing Connected Bluetooth Devices

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.



4. The connected device will be shown.
5. If desired, select a different previously paired device from the list.

Disconnecting the Bluetooth Device

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.
4. Touch the name of the device you wish to disconnect.
5. Touch **Disconnect**. The phone will remain in the device list.

Deleting the Bluetooth Device

If you no longer need to use the Bluetooth device, you can delete it.

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings** on the Home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.
4. Touch 🗑
5. Touch Delete.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Apple CarPlay™ and/or Android Auto™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. The radio screen will indicate a PROJECTION ICON on the HOME screen.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Apple iPhone® or Android™ Phone by using a genuine phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use your device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

Note

Ensure SIRI is activated on your iPhone.

The PROJECTION icon on the HOME screen will change to Android Auto™ or Apple CarPlay™ depending on the phone. Apple CarPlay and/or Android Auto may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, press the APPLE CARPLAY and/or ANDROID AUTO icon on the HOME screen to launch.

For further information on how to set up Apple CarPlay and Android Auto in the vehicle, see www.holden.com.au.

CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. For further information, support and compatible devices, see www.apple.com or www.google.com. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc., Android Auto™ is a trademark of Google Inc.

Hands-Free Phone

Making Calls

By Entering Phone Number

1. Enter the phone number using the keypad on the Phone screen.

2. Touch on the display, or press on the steering wheel control or on the control panel.

Note

If you enter the wrong number, touch to delete the entered number one digit at a time or touch and hold to delete all the in putted numbers.

By Re-dial

From the steering wheel control, press or touch on the Phone screen.

Note
Redialling is not possible when there is no call history.

From Call History

1. Touch **Call History** on the Phone screen.
2. Touch All call history
3. Select the contact you want to call.

With Speed Dial Numbers

Touch and hold speed dial number using the keypad on the Phone screen.

Only speed dial numbers already stored on the mobile phone can be used for speed dial calls. Up to 2-digit speed dial numbers are supported.

For 2-digit speed dial numbers, touch and hold the 2nd digit to make a call to the speed dial number.

Contacts

1. Touch **Contacts** on the Phone screen.

2. Use ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list.
3. Select the Phone book entry you want to call.
4. If a contact has two or more phone numbers, touch a number to call.

Searching for Contact Entries

1. Touch **Contacts** on the Phone screen.
2. Touch on the Contacts screen.
3. Use the keypad to input the name you want to search.
4. Select the Phone book entry you want to call.

Receiving Calls

1. When a phone call comes through the connected Bluetooth mobile phone, the playing track will be cut off and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.
2. To talk on the phone, touch on the steering wheel remote control or touch on the screen.

   To reject the call, touch the on the steering wheel remote control or touch on the screen.

Switching Call to the Phone (Private Mode)

1. If you want to switch the call to a mobile phone instead of the car hands-free, touch .

2. If you want to switch the call back to the hands-free, touch again. The call is switched to the car hands-free.

Microphone

You can switch the microphone on/off by touching .

Voice Mail

The default voice mail number is the phone number of the currently connected phone. The voice mail number can be changed in Bluetooth settings.

To dial a voice mail number:

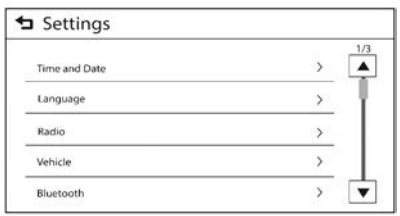
1. Touch the Phone screen button.
2. Select Voice Mail.
3. Select Call.

Settings

General Operation of the Settings Menu

Various settings for the infotainment system and vehicle can be made via the SETTINGS menu.

1. Press on the control panel.
2. Touch **Settings**.



3. Select the desired setting value.

Note

Settings menus and functions may vary depending on your vehicle option.

Time and Date

To set the time and date see *Clock* ⇨ *86*.

Language

1. Touch **Language**.
2. Select language displayed on the Infotainment system.

Radio

Adjusts the radio application settings. See *AM-FM-DAB Radio* ⇨ *133*.

Vehicle

Displays the vehicle personalisation settings. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Bluetooth

Displays the Bluetooth settings. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *145*.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto settings. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *148*.

USB Auto Launch

1. Touch **USB Auto Launch**.
2. Select on or off.
   - On : If you connect a device through the USB port, it will be launched automatically.
   - Off : If you connect a device through the USB port, it will not be launched automatically.

Turn display Off

1. Touch **Turn Display Off** to turn the display off.
2. Press any button or touch the screen to turn the display On.

Rear Camera

1. Touch **Rear Camera**.
   - Guidance Lines : Select the Guidance Lines feature to turn on or off.
   - Rear Park Assist Symbols : Select the Rear Park Assist Symbols feature to turn on or off.

Return to Factory Settings

1. Touch **Return to Factory Settings**.
   - Reset Vehicle Settings : Restore all vehicle settings.
   - Clear All Private Data : Clear all private data from the system.
   - Restore Radio Settings : Restore all radio settings.

Software Information

1. Touch **Software Information**.
   - Open Source : Display Open Source Software licensing information.
   - System Update : Update the system.

Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available for this vehicle:

- MyLink (without built-in navigation)
- MyLink with Built-in Navigation.

The following pages describe the features and operation of the MyLink with Built-in Navigation system. For vehicles fitted with a MyLink system, see *Introduction* ⇨ *124*.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The MyLink with Built-in Navigation infotainment system has features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features may also be available through the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation and infotainment display controls.
- Set up the audio by presetting favourite stations and tone.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command using Bluetooth® phone capability.

To play the infotainment system with the ignition off, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *228*.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The Infotainment system has an electronic security system to prevent theft.

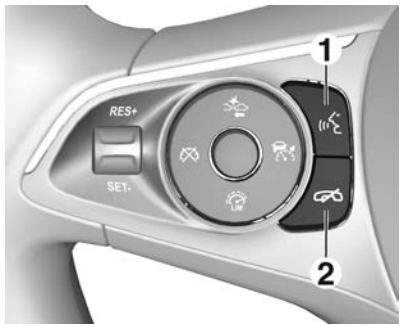
Therefore, the infotainment system will only function in the vehicle in which it was first installed and cannot be used in another vehicle.

Overview

Control Panel

1. Power / Volume:
   - Press and hold to turn the power on/off.
   - Press to turn the mute function on/off.
   - Turn to adjust the volume.
2. Display / Touchscreen.
3. Home menu. Touchscreen buttons for:
   - **AUDIO:** Audio functions.
   - **PHONE:** Mobile phone functions.
   - **PROJECTION:** Phone projection (Apple CarPlay / Android Auto).
   - **NAV:** Satellite navigation functions
   - **SETTINGS:** System settings.
   - **TEXT:** Mobile phone text messaging functions.
4. MEDIA: Press to activate connected external devices.
5. ≫:
   - Press to seek the next radio station or media track.
   - Press and hold to seek up radio stations or fast forward media.
6. HOME: Press to display the home screen.
7. MENU:
   - Turn: Mark screen buttons or menu items. Scroll through a list of menu items. Change a settings value. Zoom a navigation system map in or out.
   - Press: Select or activate a marked screen button or menu item. Confirm a set value. Switch to a different settings option. Open an application-specific submenu.
8. BACK. Press to return to the previous screen or menu.
9. ≪:
   - Press to seek the previous radio station or media track.
   - Press and hold to seek down radio stations or fast rewind media.
10. RADIO: Press to activate the radio or change a waveband.

Steering Wheel Remote Control

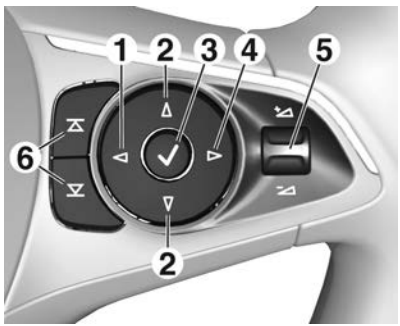


1. Call :
   - Press to take a phone call, activate speech recognition or interrupt a voice prompt.

- When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system: Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

  Press and hold to activate the phone's voice pass-thru if supported by the phone.

2. End ☎: Press to end or decline an incoming call, end speech recognition or activate/ deactivate the Mute function.



1. ◁: Press to open the Driver Information Centre (DIC) main menu page (refer images below).
2. ▽ or △:
   - Press to scroll through the DIC menu items.
   - Press and hold to fast scroll through long lists in the DIC, e.g. contacts.
3. ✓: Confirm a selection of a DIC item.
4. ▷: If available, press to open a sub-page of the selected item in the DIC.
5. ◿ + / –: Press towards + to increase volume or towards – to decrease volume.
6. ⏫ or ⏬:
   - Radio: press to select the next/previous favourite station in the DIC.
   - Media: press to select the next/previous track in the DIC.

Also see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *101*.

Operation

System On/Off

- Press ⏻ on the control panel to turn the power on. The last function will be executed.
- Press and hold ⏻ on the control panel to turn the power off. The time and temperature will be shown on the screen.

Turning On/Off Automatically

When the ignition is in accessory or on, the infotainment system is turned on automatically.

When the ignition is off and the driver's door is opened, the infotainment system is turned off automatically.

Note

If ⏻ is pressed and held when the ignition is off, the infotainment system is turned on for approximately 10 minutes.

Volume Control

Rotate the volume knob ⏻ on the control panel to adjust the volume. The current sound volume is indicated.

Alternately, using the steering wheel remote control, press ◿ towards **+** to increase volume or towards **–** to decrease volume.

- Turning on the infotainment system will set the volume level to its previous selection (when it is less than the maximum starting volume).
- If the volume level is louder than maximum starting volume level when the infotainment system is turned on, the sound level is adjusted automatically to maximum starting volume level.

Speed Compensated Volume

Press ⌂ and then select Settings. Select Radio, scroll through the list and then select Auto Volume.

To adjust the degree of volume adaptation, select one of the options in the list.

- **Off:** No enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.
- **High:** Maximum enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.

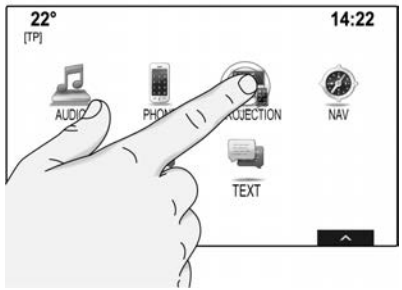
Mute

Press ⏻ on the control panel to turn the mute function on and off.

Using Home Screen

The home screen is where all applications may be accessed.

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel. The Home screen is displayed.



2. Touch the desired menu button (icon).
   - AUDIO to select AM/ FM/ DAB/ USB/ Bluetooth music input.
   - PHONE to activate phone features (if connected).
   - PROJECTION to activate Android Auto or Apple Carplay.

     If a compatible smartphone is already connected to the USB port, the Projection icon will be replaced with Android Auto or Apple Carplay icons.

- NAV to activate the satellite navigation.
- SETTINGS to enter the system setup menu.
- TEXT to activate phone text messaging features (if connected).

Note

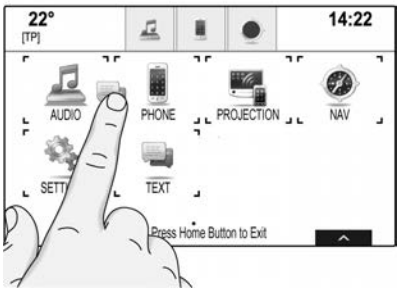
Not all items may be available.

Some items may be on a second home screen page identified by the small circles in the lower centre of the screen. Swipe to one side.

To return to the next higher menu level, select ⮌. To leave the menu currently active, select **Exit**.

Moving Items

Home screen icons can be moved.



Touch and hold the icon you wish to move until frame marks appear around the icons.

Move your finger to the desired location and release the icon.

Note

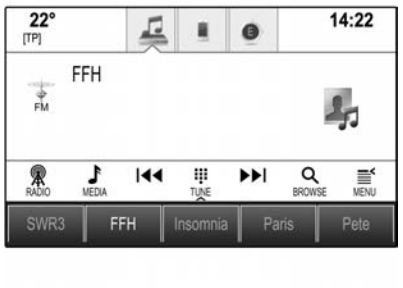
Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at a constant speed.

All other items are rearranged.

Press ⌂ on the control panel to exit edit mode.

Menu Operation

Application Tray



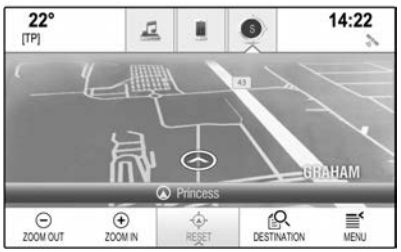
The application tray is located in the top centre of the display and is accessible from all main menus. Three to five application icons may be stored in the application tray.

Some application icons dynamically adapt to the current situation, e.g. indicating that you missed a phone call.

The application tray can be personalised by moving items into and out of the application tray area.

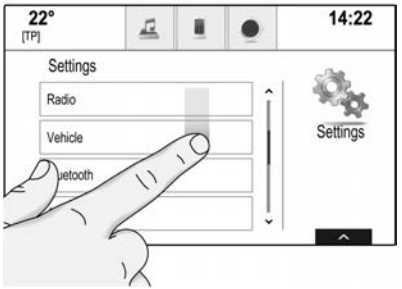
Interaction Selector Bar

The interaction selector bar is located at the bottom of the screen and is accessible from all main menus.



By using the interaction selector bar, you can change the different views within one application or perform application-specific actions such as starting a speech recognition session. To display the interaction selector bar when it is not shown on the display, select ∧ at the bottom of the screen.

Scrolling Lists



When navigating menus, if more items are available than displayed on the screen, the list can be scrolled.

To scroll through a list of menu items, you may optionally:

- Place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it upwards or downwards.

Note

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at a constant speed.

- Touch ∨ or ∧ at the top or bottom of the scroll bar.
- Move the scroll bar slider up and down with your finger.
- In alphabetically ordered lists, touch the letter you want in the vertical keyboard. The list jumps to the corresponding location within the list.

  To return to the top of the list, touch the list title.

Note

In subsequent chapters, the operating steps for scrolling to a list item via the touchscreen will be described as "...scroll to <item name>.

Messages

In the case of a system event, before the execution of a system function, or due to an outside trigger, e.g. incoming phone call, you may be prompted with a message.

Select one of the available options.

If ignored, most of the messages are dismissed automatically after a certain period of time. Alerts that are not dismissed automatically remain on the screen until they are acknowledged or the trigger becomes invalid.

Keyboards

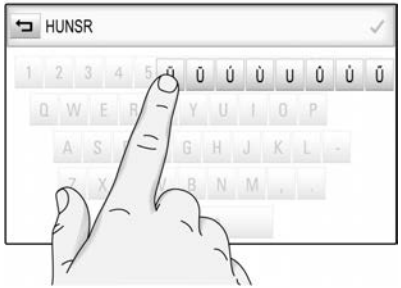
Letter Keyboard

Symbol keyboard

Depending on the application or function currently active, the keyboard menu is displayed differently. To switch to the symbol keyboard, select **SYM**. To switch to the letter keyboard, select **ABC**.

Entering Characters

To enter a character, touch its screen button. The character is entered upon release.



Touch and hold a letter screen button to display associated letters in a letter pop-up menu. Release and then select the desired letter.

To confirm your input, select the confirmation screen button.

Auto-complete Function

If a character sequence has been entered once, it is stored within the system and may be recalled by the auto-complete function.

As soon as one character (letter or digit) is entered, the auto-complete function becomes active. Every additional character entered is

considered in the matching process, reducing the list of auto-complete matches.

Select ∨ next to the characters entered to display a list of all auto-complete matches.

Note

Above the ∨ screen button, the number of available options is displayed. It changes according to the number of matches found. Select a list item. The keyboard is re-displayed with the list item shown in the entry field.

Editing Text

To place the cursor, touch a position within the text. Enter your changes.

Depending on the application, select **X** to delete one entered character. Touch and hold **X** to delete all characters.

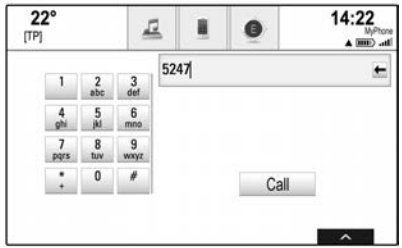
Select the confirmation screen button to confirm an input.

Mixed Case Characters

In most cases, only capital letters may be entered. If mixed case character recognition is available, an additional **Shift** screen button is displayed. To activate the shift function and capitalise one letter, select **Shift**. The function is automatically deactivated after one letter has been entered.

Keypad

If only a number or PIN code are to be entered, a keypad is displayed. Depending on the application or function currently active, the keypad menu is displayed differently.



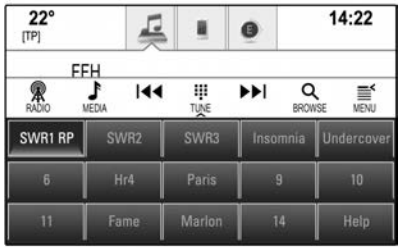
For a detailed description of how to enter characters and change entered text, see above.

Favourites

A range of different information may be stored as favourites, e.g.:

- Radio stations.
- Music tracks.
- Albums or artists.
- Telephone numbers.
- Destinations and routes.
- POIs.
- Contact entries.

- Tone settings.
- Home screen applications.



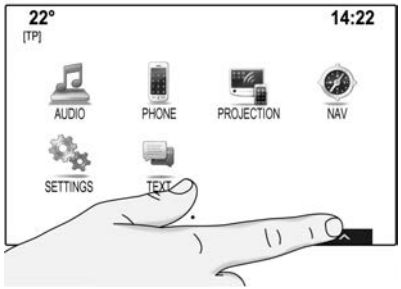
60 individual favourite locations are available, displayed as five favourites per row.

They can be displayed in a one-row view or in a three-row view.

If a favourite location is occupied, the Favourites screen button displays the label text of the favourite. If a favourite location is empty, the position number of the favourite location (1 to 60) is indicated.

Displaying Favourites

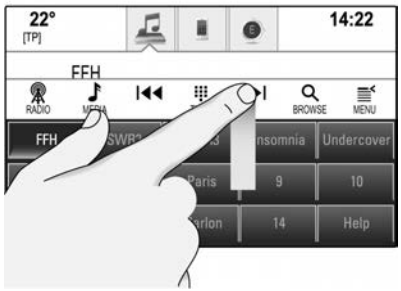
The favourites list is accessible from all menus. To display one row of favourites when no interaction selector bar is shown at the bottom of the screen: Select ∧ .



To display one row of favourites when an interaction selector bar is shown on the screen, place your finger on the interaction selector bar and move it upwards until one row of favourites becomes visible.

Note

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at constant speed.



To display three rows of favourites, drag the favourites list up further.

Scrolling Through Favourites Pages

The favourites page is visible in the one row or the three row view.

To scroll through the favourites pages, place your finger anywhere on the favourites page and move it left or right. The next or previous page of favourites is displayed.

Note

Constant pressure must be applied and the finger must be moved at constant speed.

When reaching the beginning or the end of the favourites pages, the entire list wraps to the beginning.

At the bottom of the screen, indication marks designate how many favourites pages may be accessed and which page is currently displayed. The number of indication marks adapts to the view chosen (more pages in one-row view, less pages in three-row view).

Storing Favourites

Favourites may be stored from the home screen, the audio application, the navigation application or the phone application.

Display the favourites list and scroll to the Favourites page. Touch and hold the favourite's screen button.

If there is only one storable item on the screen, a beep sounds and the item is stored to the screen button.

If there is more than one storable item on the screen, the favourites page is minimised and the previously shown menu is re-displayed.

Select the item you wish to store as a favourite. A beep sounds and the item is stored to the screen button. A few examples for storing favourites are given below.

Example: Radio station Press ⌂ and select **AUDIO** on the home screen. To activate the desired waveband, repeatedly select **RADIO** in the interaction selector bar.

Seek for the station you wish to store as a favourite.

To store this station as a favourite, display the Favourites list and scroll to the Favourites page.

Touch and hold the favourite's screen button until a beep sounds. The station is stored as a favourite.

Example: Album Press ⌂ and select **AUDIO** on the home screen. Repeatedly select **MEDIA** in the interaction selector bar until the desired audio source is active.

Select **BROWSE** to activate the browse menu and then select **ALBUMS**. To store one of the albums as a favourite, reveal the Favourites list and scroll to the Favourites page.

Touch and hold the favourite's screen button. The favourites page is minimised and the list of albums is re-displayed. Select the album you wish to store as a favourite. The selected album is stored as a favourite.

Example: Destination Press ⌂ and select **NAV** on the home screen. Select **DESTINATION**, select **RECENT** in the interaction selector bar and then touch the desired destination from the list. To store the address as a favourite, display the favourites list and scroll to the favourites page.

Touch and hold the favourite's screen button. The selected address is stored as a favourite.

Example: Telephone number

Press ⌂ and select **PHONE** on the home screen. Select **KEYPAD** and enter the number you wish to call. To store this number as a favourite, display the favourites list and scroll to the favourites page.

Touch and hold the favourite's screen button. The number is stored as a favourite.

Retrieving Favourites

Display a favourites page (see above) and scroll to the desired favourites page (if necessary).

Note

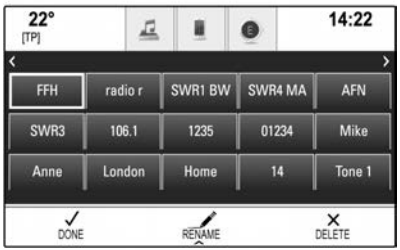
Unavailable favourites are greyed out.

Select the favourite's screen button. Depending on the kind of favourite selected, a radio station or track is played, a phone call is initiated, a route is calculated or an application is started.

The active favourite is highlighted.

Editing Favourites

Select **SETTINGS** on the home screen, and then **Radio** then **Manage Favourites**.



A three-row view of the favourites list is displayed with the editing options shown in the interaction selector bar.

Renaming Favourites: Scroll to the Favourites page and select the favourite you wish to edit. Select **RENAME**. A keyboard opens up with the current favourite label text displayed in the entry field as well as in the label preview area.

Enter the new label text and select **Save**. You are returned to the favourites page.

Select ∧ at the bottom of the screen to reveal the interaction selector bar and then select **DONE** to return to the settings menu.

Deleting Favourites: Scroll to the Favourites page and select the favourite you wish to delete. Select **DELETE**. The favourite and all associated data are deleted.

Select **DONE** to return to the settings menu.

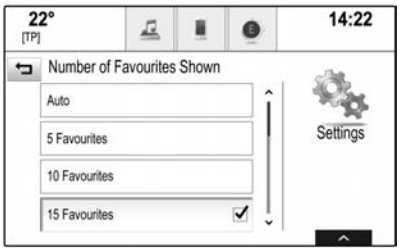
Moving Favourites: Scroll to the Favourites page. Drag the favourite you wish to move to its new position.

To store a favourite in a location beyond the favourites page currently visible, drag it to the < or > symbols on top of the favourites page. The list starts scrolling.

To stop scrolling, navigate back to the favourites page area. Select **DONE** to confirm the action and return to the settings menu.

Defining the Number of Favourites Shown

Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen. Select **Radio** and then **Number of Favourites Shown**.



Activate the desired number of favourites to be displayed.

Note

If the number of favourites stored exceeds the number of favourites activated in the settings menu, the additionally stored favourites are not deleted but just hidden from the view. They may be reactivated by increasing the number of viewable favourites.

Contacts

Two different types of contacts lists may be accessed from the infotainment system:

- Contacts lists downloaded from Bluetooth devices or other external sources.
- Vehicle contacts list.

Note

A maximum of 1000 contacts may be stored in the vehicle contacts list. There is no limit for downloaded contacts lists.

The contacts list displayed upon first access differs depending on the application active and the devices connected.

Changing the Source

To display a contacts list, press ⌂, activate the phone application and then select **CONTACTS** in the interaction selector bar.

Select **Change Contacts List** on the right side of the screen. A list of all contact sources available is displayed. The currently active contacts list is marked with ✓.

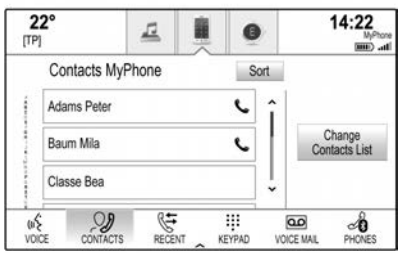
Select the desired contacts list. The list is displayed.

Note

The system remembers a list chosen within an application. When re-entering the contacts list from this application, the list previously selected is re-displayed.

Using the Contacts List

To display a contacts list, press ⌂, activate the phone application and then select **CONTACTS** in the interaction selector bar.



To display the contact details view, select one of the entries from the list. The contact details view may comprise:

- First name and last name.
- Several phone numbers.
- Several email addresses.
- Several addresses (e.g. home and work).
- In the vehicle contacts list: category entry.
- In the vehicle contacts list: notes field.
- For POI entries: information on business hours, menu (e.g. restaurant), prices etc.

Note

The data is ordered depending on the application active, e.g. in the phone application, the phone numbers are displayed first.

Select the desired entry.

Adding New Contacts

To add information from the application menus to the vehicle contacts list, open the application.

Navigation Application:

Select or enter a destination. The destination details view is displayed. Select **Save**. A menu is displayed.

Phone Application:

Select **RECENT**. Select **+** beside the phone number you wish to add to the contacts list. A menu is displayed.

Select one of the options.

- Create New Contact: A data category selection menu is displayed. Select the data category for the information you

wish to store, such as work address or mobile phone. The contact details view is displayed.

Note

The data categories presented in the new menu correspond to the information you wish to store, e.g. if the information to be stored is an address, only address types are presented in the list.

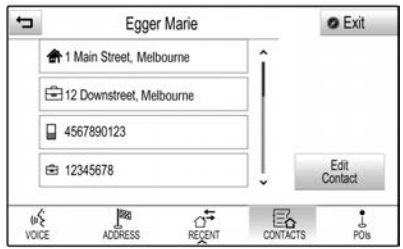
Complete the entry and select **Save** to save the contact.

- Add to Existing Contact: The vehicle contacts list is displayed. Select the desired contact. The contact details view is displayed with the information to be added shown separately on the right side of the screen. Select the data category for the information you wish to store, such as work address or mobile phone.

  If you choose an existing data category, the existing information is overwritten. Select Save to save the new information.

Editing Contacts

To edit a contact, open the vehicle contacts list. Select the desired contact entry in the vehicle contacts list. Select **Edit Contact** on the right side of the screen.



The editing view is displayed.

Modifying Information:

Select the field you wish to modify. Depending on the field selected, the keyboard or keypad is displayed. Enter your changes. Select Save in the contact details view to save your changes.

Adding New Information:

Select the field where you wish to enter additional information. If you wish to create a new field for a data category already existing, such as a second mobile phone number, select **+** in the data field.

Note

The **+** screen button is only displayed if it is possible to add more information for that data category.

Depending on the field selected, the keyboard or keypad is displayed. Enter the new data and select the screen button in front of the entry field.

Select **Save** in the contact details view to save your changes.

Deleting Contacts

Deleting a Single Contact:

To delete a single contact, open the vehicle contacts list. Select the desired contact entry in the vehicle contacts list. Select **Edit Contact** on the right side of the screen.

To delete the contact entry and all associated information, select **Delete**. A confirmation message is displayed. Confirm the message. The entry is deleted.

Delete the Entire Vehicle Contacts List:

To delete the entire vehicle contacts list, open the vehicle contacts list. Select **Change Contacts List** on the right side of the screen. A list of all available contacts sources is displayed. The currently active contacts list is marked with ✓.

Select the **–** screen button next to **Vehicle**.

A confirmation message is displayed. Confirm the message to delete the list.

Sorting the Contacts Lists:

By default, the lists are ordered alphabetically by first name. If there is no first name available, the last name is taken instead. If there is no first or last name, one of the first characters entered is used as sorting criteria.

The sorting order may be changed if first name and last name are stored in two different fields.

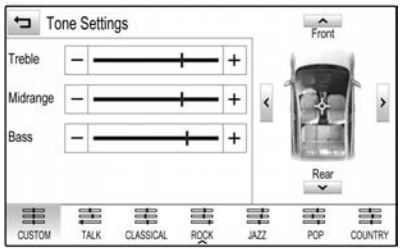
To change the sorting order, select **Sort**. Choose the desired sorting order. The list is resorted accordingly.

Tone Settings

In the tone settings menu, the tone characteristics can be set. The menu may be accessed from each audio main menu.

Note
A customised set of tone settings may be stored as a favourite.

To open the tone settings menu, select **MENU** in the audio main menu. Select **Tone Settings**.



Treble

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the high frequencies of the audio sources. Adjust the setting by repeatedly touching **–** or **+**.

Alternatively, move the slider on the settings bar.

Midrange

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the midrange frequencies of the audio source. Adjust the settings by repeatedly touching **–** or **+**.

Alternatively, move the slider on the settings bar.

Bass

Use this setting to enhance or attenuate the deep frequencies of the audio sources. Adjust the settings by repeatedly touching **–** or **+**.

Alternatively, move the slider on the settings bar.

Balance and Fader

In the illustration at the right side of the menu, define the point within the passenger compartment which is to have the best sound.

To adjust the settings, touch ∨ , ∧ , < or >.

To quickly change between the front and rear speakers, select **Front** or **Rear** at the top and bottom of the vehicle diagram.

Equaliser Modes

Select one of the screen buttons in the interaction selector bar to optimise the tone for the specific styles of music. Select **CUSTOM** if you wish to define the tone settings yourself.

Volume Settings

Maximum Startup Volume

Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.

Scroll through the list and select **Radio** and then **Maximum Start-Up Volume**. Touch**–** or **+** to set the desired volume.

Automatic Volume Adjustment

Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.

Scroll through the list and select **Radio** and then **Auto Volume**.

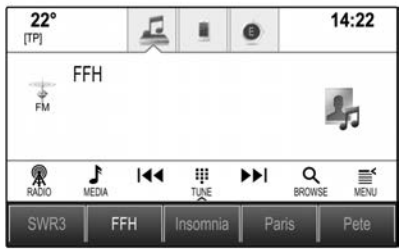
To adjust the degree of volume adaptation, set Auto Volume to one of the available options.

- **Off:** no enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.
- **High:** maximum enhancement of volume with increasing vehicle speed.

Radio

AM-FM-DAB Radio

The radio function is part of the AUDIO application.



Press ⌂ and select **AUDIO** on the home screen.

Select **RADIO** in the interaction selector bar.

Repeatedly select **RADIO** to toggle between the different wavebands, e.g. AM, FM or DAB.

Station Search

Automatic Station Search

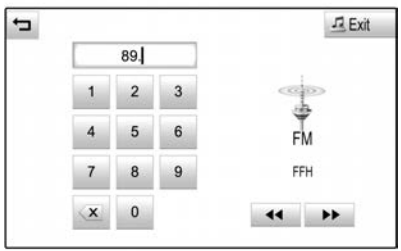
Touch ⏮ / ⏭ to play the previous or next station.

Manual Station Search

Touch and hold ⏮ / ⏭. Release the button when the desired frequency has almost been reached.

Station Tuning

Select **TUNE** in the interaction selector bar. A keypad is displayed.

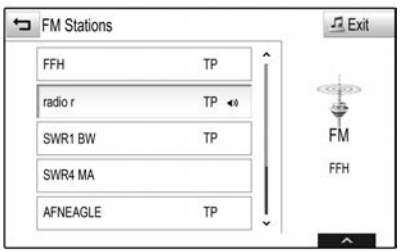


Touch the **Direct Tune** field and then enter the desired frequency. Confirm your input.

Station Lists

In the station lists, all receivable radio stations within the current reception area are available for selection.

To display the station list of the waveband currently active, select **BROWSE** in the interaction selector bar. The station list is displayed.



The currently received station is highlighted. Scroll through the list and select the desired item.

Updating the Station List

If the stations are stored in a waveband station list can no longer be received, select **Update Station List**.

Note

If a waveband station list is updated, the corresponding category list is also updated.

Updating Station List is displayed on the screen until the search has been completed.

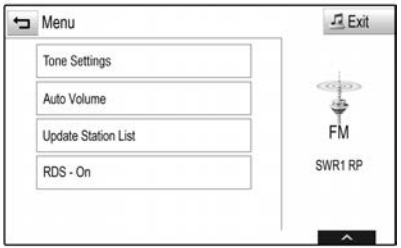
Radio Data System

Radio data system (RDS) is a service of FM stations that makes it considerably easier to find the desired station with error-free reception. Advantages of RDS:

- On the display, the program name of the station appears instead of its frequency.
- Depending on the station received, the infotainment system displays radio text that may contain information on the current program.

RDS Settings

To configure the RDS settings options, activate the radio function and then select the FM waveband. Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar to display the FM menu.



Set **RDS - On** or **RDS - Off**.

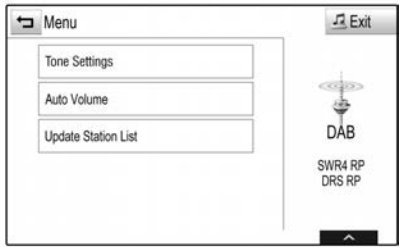
Digital Audio Broadcasting

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) broadcasts radio stations digitally. Advantages of DAB include:

- DAB stations are indicated by the programme name instead of the broadcasting frequency.
- With DAB, several radio programs (services) can be broadcast on a single ensemble.
- As long as a given DAB receiver can pick up the signal sent out by a broadcasting station (even if the signal is very weak), sound reproduction is ensured.
- Interference caused by stations that are on nearby frequencies (a phenomenon that is typical of AM and FM reception) does not occur with DAB.
- If the DAB signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings, the reception quality of DAB is improved, whereas AM or FM reception is considerably impaired in such cases.

DAB Settings

To configure the DAB settings options, activate the radio function and then select the DAB waveband. Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar to display the DAB menu.



Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power/USB outlet.

If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power/USB outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 16 to 65 km.

Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night.

The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception.

When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

DAB

DAB is more robust to noise (unwanted interference) particularly in built-up areas (tall buildings).

The range for most DAB stations is less than for FM. Refer to the station providers for coverage areas.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage can cause interference with the vehicle's radio.

Audio Players

USB

USB Port

A USB port for the connection of external devices is located in the centre console.

Note

Not all devices are supported by the infotainment system.

Connecting/Disconnecting a Device

Devices such as an MP3 player, USB drive or smartphone can be connected to the USB port.

The infotainment system can play audio files, display picture files or play movie files contained in the USB storage device. When connected to the USB port, various functions of the devices mentioned above can be operated via the controls and menus.

When connecting a device use a genuine connection cable.

If a non-readable USB device is connected, a corresponding error message is displayed and the infotainment system automatically switches to the previous function.

To disconnect the USB device, select another function and then remove the USB storage device.

Caution
Avoid disconnecting the device during playback. This may damage the device or the infotainment system.

USB Auto Launch

By default, the USB audio menu is displayed automatically as soon as a USB device is connected containing music files.

If desired, this function can be deactivated.

Press ⌂ and then select **SETTINGS** to open the settings menu. Select **Radio**, scroll to **USB Auto Launch** and touch the screen button next to the function. To reactivate the function, touch the screen button again.

File Formats

Only devices formatted in the FAT32, NTFS and HFS+ file systems are supported.

Note

Some files may not be played properly. This might be due to a different recording format or the condition of the file.

Files from online shops to which Digital Rights Management (DRM) has been applied cannot be played.

The infotainment system can play the following audio and movie files stored on external devices.

Audio Files

The playable audio file formats are MP3, WMA, AAC, M4A and AIF.

When playing a file with ID3 tag information, the infotainment system can display information such as track title and artist.

Movie Files

The playable movie file formats are AVI, MPG, MP4, XVID and WMV.

Common audio and video combinations for mobile devices are generally supported.

Playing USB Music Files

Connect the USB device containing the music files to the USB port.

Press ⌂ and select **AUDIO** on the home screen.

Repeatedly select **MEDIA** in the interaction selector bar to activate the desired media source.

Example of the USB main menu.

Pausing Playback

Select ❚❚ to pause playback. Select ▶ to resume playback.

Skipping to Previous or Next Track

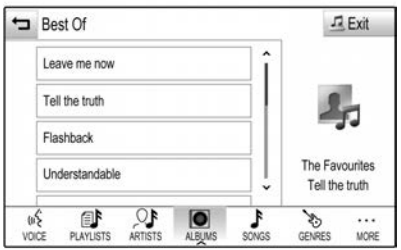
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to play the previous or next track or file.

Fast Forwarding or Rewinding

Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ to rewind or fast forward. Alternatively, move the slider on the time bar (only available for USB).

Browse Function

To display the browse screen, select **BROWSE** in the interaction selector bar.



Select **PLAYLISTS**, **ARTISTS**, **ALBUMS**, **SONGS**, **GENRES** or **MORE**.

The MORE menu comprises the additional categories: Folder View, Podcasts, Audiobooks, Videos and Composers.

Browse through the categories until you find the desired track. Select the track to start playback.

Playback Order

If Shuffle is activated, the tracks on the active device are played in random order.

Note

In USB playback, the shuffle function is dependent on the filter mode selected for song playback, e.g. album, artist, genre.

To display the audio menu, select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar.

Set **Shuffle - On** or **Shuffle - Off**.

Playing USB Movies

Starting Video Playback

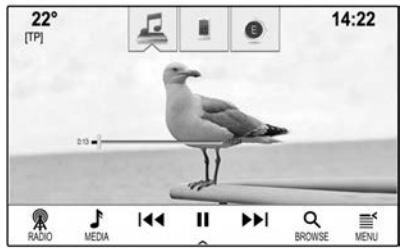
Connect the device as previously described.

Press ⌂ and select **AUDIO** on the home screen. Repeatedly select **MEDIA** in the interaction selector bar to activate the desired media source. Select **BROWSE** and then **MORE**.

Select **Videos** and then the desired movie file. Video playback is started.

Note

Videos may only be played if the parking brake is applied.



Pausing Playback

Select ❚❚ to pause playback. Select ▶ to resume playback.

Skipping to Previous or Next File

Select ⏮ or ⏭ to play the previous or next movie file.

Fast Forwarding or Rewinding

Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ to rewind or fast forward. Alternatively, move the slider on the time bar (only available for USB).

Video Menu

To display the video menu, select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar.

Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired and connected Bluetooth device. For help pairing the device see *Bluetooth* ⇨ *198*.

Before Playing Bluetooth Music

- Bluetooth music can be played through the infotainment system only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- Supported profiles: A2DP, AVRCP
- Bluetooth music may not be supported depending on the mobile phone or Bluetooth device.

- A musical note icon (♪) will appear on the screen if the Bluetooth device is successfully connected.
- If the Bluetooth is disconnected while playing music, the music is discontinued.
- For Bluetooth music to play, the music must at least be played once from the music player mode of the device.

Playing Bluetooth Music

Press ⌂ and select **AUDIO** on the home screen.

Repeatedly select **MEDIA** in the interaction selector bar to activate the desired media source.

Pausing Playback

Select ❚❚ to pause playback. Select ▶ to resume playback.

Skipping to Previous or Next Track

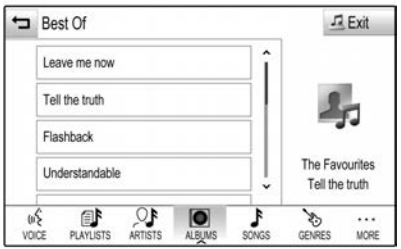
Select ⏮ or ⏭ to play the previous or next track or file.

Fast Forwarding or Rewinding

Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ to rewind or fast forward. Alternatively, move the slider on the time bar (only available for USB).

Browse Function

To display the browse screen, select **BROWSE** in the interaction selector bar.



Select **PLAYLISTS**, **ARTISTS**, **ALBUMS**, **SONGS**, **GENRES** or **MORE**.

The MORE menu comprises the additional categories: Folder View, Podcasts, Audiobooks, Videos and Composers.

Browse through the categories until you find the desired track. Select the track to start playback.

Playback Order

If Shuffle is activated, the tracks on the active device are played in random order.

Note

In USB playback, the shuffle function is dependent on the filter mode selected for song playback, e.g. album, artist, genre.

To display the audio menu, select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar.

Set **Shuffle - On** or **Shuffle - Off**.

Caution Playing Bluetooth Music

- Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.

- It takes some time to transmit data from the mobile phone to the infotainment system. The infotainment system outputs the audio from the Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.
- If the Bluetooth device is not in the idle screen mode, it may not automatically play even though it is in Bluetooth music play mode.
- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the mobile phone in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the mobile phone's options, this order to play/stop may some take time to activate.
- If Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, check to see if the mobile phone is in the idle screen mode.
- Sometimes, sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.

Navigation

Navigation System Overview

The navigation system will reliably guide you to your destination.

The navigation system cannot, however, take into account traffic incidents, traffic regulations changed at short notice and hazards or problems that arise suddenly (e.g. road works).

⚠ Danger

Giving extended attention to navigation tasks while driving will greatly increase the risk of a collision that may cause personal injury or death.

Road safety has absolute priority!

Only operate this system if the road and traffic conditions allow you to do so.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

The driver's full attention is always required while driving.

Use voice guidance directions whenever possible.

Function

The position and movement of the vehicle are detected by the navigation system using sensors. The travelled distance is determined by the vehicle's speedometer signal and turning movements on bends by a gyro sensor. The position is determined by the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellites.

By comparing the sensor signals with the digital maps, it is possible to determine the position with an accuracy of approx. 10 metres.

The system will also work with poor GPS reception. However, the accuracy of the positioning will be reduced.

After entering the destination address or point of interest (nearest petrol station, hotel, etc.), the route is calculated from the current location to the destination selected. Route guidance is provided by voice output and an arrow, as well as with the aid of a multi-colour map display.

Map Data

All required map data is stored within the infotainment system. To update your map software via the USB port, contact your dealer.

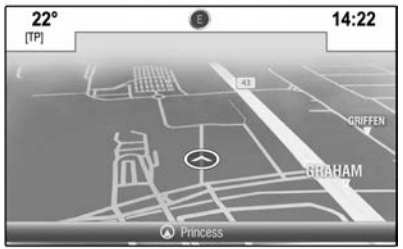
Using the Navigation System

To display the navigation map, press ⌂ and select **NAV** on the home screen.

Route Guidance Not Active

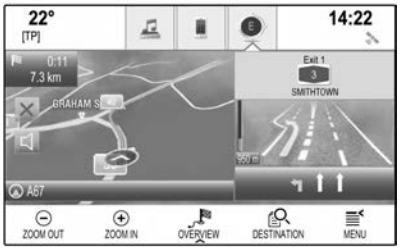
The current location is indicated by a circle with an arrow pointing to the direction of travel.

After a time-out of approx. 15 seconds, the application tray and the interaction selector bar disappear to show a full screen view of the map.



To re-display the application tray and the interaction selector bar, touch the screen.

Route Guidance Active



- The map view is displayed.
- The active route is indicated by a coloured line.
- The moving vehicle is marked by a circle.
- The next turning manoeuvre is indicated by an arrow symbol on the right side of the screen.
- Lane guidance is provided on the right side of the screen.
- The arrival time is shown above the arrow symbol.
- The distance to the next turning manoeuvre is shown below the arrow symbol.

Map Manipulation

Scrolling

To scroll the map, place your finger anywhere on the screen and move it up, down, left or right depending on the direction in which you want to scroll.

The map moves accordingly, displaying a new area.

To return to the current location, select **RESET** in the interaction selector bar.

Centring

Touch the desired location on the screen. The map centres around this location.

A red symbol is displayed at the location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

To return to the current location, select **RESET** in the interaction selector bar.

Zooming

To zoom in on a selected map location, select **ZOOM IN**. To zoom out and display a larger area around the selected location, select **ZOOM OUT**. Alternatively, turn the MENU knob.

Overview Button

During active route guidance, an OVERVIEW screen button is displayed in the interaction selector bar.

To display an overview of the route currently active on the map, select **OVERVIEW**. The screen button changes to RESET. To return to the normal view, select **RESET**.

Map Display

View Mode

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

Select the desired map view (**3D View**, **Heading Up View**, **North Up View**).

Note

Alternately, you may repeatedly select Ⓢ in the application tray to quickly toggle between the different map views (The letter within the circle changes based on the direction the vehicle is facing, e.g. S = South).

Audio Information

If Audio Information - On is set, information on the station, album or song currently playing is displayed on the map screen.

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

Set **Audio Information - On** or **Audio Information - Off**.

Display Mode

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

Select **Day / Night Mode**.

Depending on the external lighting conditions, activate Day or Night. If you wish the screen to adjust automatically, activate Auto.

Display of Buildings

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

Buildings can be displayed in 3D or normal view. Set **3D Buildings - On** or **3D Buildings - Off**.

Autozoom Function

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Map View** to display the submenu.

The system may zoom in on the map for special manoeuvres. Set **Autozoom - On** or **Autozoom - Off**.

POI Icons

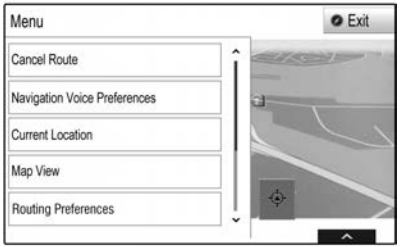
Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Display "Points of Interest" Icons** to display the submenu.

If POI Icons is activated, points of interest around the current location or along the route are displayed on the map. Set **POI Icons - On** or **POI Icons - Off**.

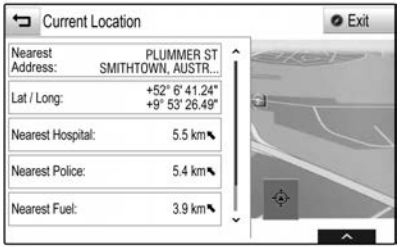
If POI Icons is set to On, activate the POI categories you wish to be displayed. Select **Clear All** to deselect all categories.

Information on the Current Location

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar to display the Navigation menu.



Select **Current Location** to display the submenu indicating details on the nearest address, the coordinates and Points of Interest around the current location.



Nearest Address

From this submenu, you may store the nearest address to the system. Select **Nearest Address:** to display the destination details view.

For a detailed description on how to save an address as or to a contact, or as a favourite see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Points of Interest

From this submenu, you may start route guidance to one of the nearest points of interest.

Select the desired point of interest. The destination details view is displayed. Select **Go**.

For a detailed description on how to enter a destination see *Enter Destination* ⇨ *184*.

Navigation Data Management

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Personal Data**. A list of different data storage locations of the navigation application is displayed.

Contacts List

Select **Contacts** to display the submenu. To delete all entries in the contacts list, select **Delete All Entries**. Confirm the message displayed to delete the entire contacts list.

To display the contacts edit mode, select **Edit** Contacts List. For a detailed description on editing the contacts list see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Recent Destinations List

Select **Recent Destinations** to display the submenu.

To delete all entries in the recent destinations list, select **Delete All Destinations**. Confirm the message displayed to delete the entire recent destinations list.

To delete individual destinations, select **Delete Individual Destinations**. The recent destinations list is displayed. Select **–** next to the destination. Confirm the message displayed to delete the destination.

Downloaded POIs

Select **My POIs** to display the submenu.

POIs which were previously downloaded to the system may be deleted. The other POIs remain within the system.

To delete all entries in the contacts list, select **Delete All My POIs**. Confirm the message displayed to delete the entire POIs list.

To delete only individual categories, select **Delete Individual Categories** to display a list of POI categories. Select **–** next to the category. Confirm the message displayed to delete the category.

Uploading Destination Data to a USB Device

For later use, e.g. in other vehicles, you can store the vehicle contacts list and POIs previously downloaded (see "Creating and Downloading User Defined POIs" below) on a USB device.

Select **Upload Saved Locations**.

The contacts list and POI data is stored on the connected USB device in the folders 'F:\myContacts' or 'F: \myPOIs', where 'F:\' is the root folder of the USB device.

Note

This function may only be carried out if a USB device with sufficient storage space is connected.

Autocomplete Function

To delete the list of destination entries used by the autocomplete function, select **Delete Autocomplete**.

Downloading Contacts Data

You can share your vehicle contacts list data with infotainment systems in other vehicles.

To upload the data to a USB device, see "Uploading Destination Data to a USB Device" above.

Connect the USB device to the infotainment system. A message is displayed that prompts you to confirm the download. After confirmation, the contacts data is downloaded to the infotainment system.

The downloaded contacts are then selectable via the CONTACTS menu. See *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Creating and Downloading User Defined POIs (My POIs)

In addition to the predefined POIs already stored in the infotainment system, you can create user defined POIs that meet your personal requirements.

After creation, such downloaded user defined POIs can be downloaded to the Infotainment system.

For each POI, you need to define the GPS coordinates (longitude and latitude values) of the location and a descriptive name.

After downloading the POI data to the infotainment system, you will find the POIs as selectable destinations in the My POIs menu, see "POIs Entry" in *Enter Destination* ⇨ *184*.

Creating a Text File with POI Data

Create a text file (e.g. by using a simple text editor software) with an arbitrary name and the file extension .poi, e.g. 'TomsPOIs.poi'.

Note

Character encoding UTF-8 (Unicode) must be selected when storing the text file. Otherwise the POI data may not be imported correctly to the system.

"TomsPOIs.poi"
File Edit Format View
7.0350000, 50.6318040, "Michaels Home", "Altona North", "02379
7.1011110, 50.7352780, "Smithtown Centre", "Basement garage"
6.9627780, 50.9361101, "Smithtown Railway Station"

Enter the POI data into the text file in the following format:

Longitude coordinate, Latitude coordinate, "Name of POI", "Additional information", "Phone number"

Example: 7.0350000, 50.6318040, "Michaels Home", "Altona North", "02379234567", see illustration above.

The GPS coordinates must be expressed in decimal degrees and can be taken, e.g., from a topographical map. The additional information and phone number strings are optional.

If no additional information is required for example, " must be entered at the position. Example: 7.0350000, 50.6318040, "Michaels Home", ", "02379234567".

The POI name and the additional information string may not exceed 60 characters each. The phone number string may not exceed 30 characters.

The POI data of each destination address must be entered in a single separate line, see the illustration above.

Storing the POI Data on a USB Drive

In the root directory of a USB drive, create a folder named 'myPOIs', e.g. 'F:\myPOIs', where 'F:\' is the root directory of the USB drive.

In the 'myPOIs' folder, store the text file with your POIs, e.g. 'F:\myPOIs \TomsPOIs.poi'.

Organising the POI Data in Several Sub-folders

Optionally, you can organise the text files in several randomly named sub-folders (max. depth of sub-folder structure: 2).

Examples: 'F:\myPOIs\AnnsPOIs' or 'F:\myPOIs\MyJourney\Outback', where 'F:\' is the root directory of the USB drive.

Note

In a folder, only sub-folders or only POI files may be stored. A mixture of both will not be imported correctly to the system.

After downloading individual POI data organised in that way to the infotainment system (see download description further below), the My POIs menu will show a list of selectable submenus.

After selecting a submenu, further submenus or the related list of imported POI categories will be displayed.

Downloading the POI Data to the Infotainment System

Connect the USB device with your user defined POI data to the USB port. A message is displayed that prompts you to confirm the download. After confirmation, the POI data will be downloaded to the infotainment system.

The downloaded POIs are then selectable as destinations via the My POIs menu, see "POIs Entry" in *Enter Destination* ⇨ *184*.

Enter Destination

The navigation application provides different options to set a destination for route guidance.

Press ⌂ and select **NAV** on the home screen to display the navigation map.

Select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar and then select one of the different address entry options.

One-shot Destination Entry

Touch the entry field in the top line of the menu. A keyboard is displayed.

For a detailed description on using keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Enter an address or search a term and confirm your input. Two lists with possible destinations are created. To switch between the list tabs, touch **Address** or **POI** in the top line of the screen.

Address list:

POI list:

For a detailed description on POIs, see "POIs Entry" below.

Select one of the destinations. The destination details view is displayed.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

Address Entry Screen

Select **ADDRESS**. The Address Entry screen is displayed.

Touch one of the entry fields next to the address part entries. A keyboard is displayed.

For a detailed description on the keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Enter the required destination information.

Note
The screen does not need to be filled out completely.

To confirm your input, select ✓ in the top right corner of the screen.

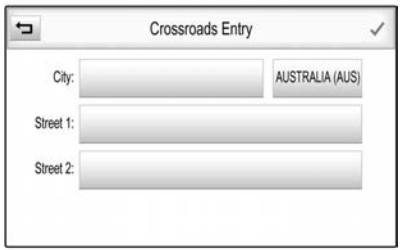
If there is more than one destination possible according to the information entered, a list of all

matching destinations found is displayed. Select the desired address.

The destination details view is displayed. To start route guidance, select **Go**.

Crossroad Entry Screen

Select **CROSSROADS**. The Crossroads Entry screen is displayed.



Touch one of the entry fields next to the address part entries. A keyboard is displayed.

For a detailed description on the keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Enter the required destination information. To confirm your input, select ✓ in the top right corner of the screen.

If there is more than one destination possible according to the information entered, a list of all matching destinations found is displayed. Select the desired address.

The destination details view is displayed. To start route guidance, select **Go**.

POIs Entry

A Point of Interest (POI) is a specific location that might be of general interest, e.g. a petrol station, a parking area or a restaurant.

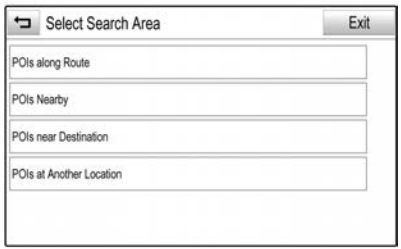
The data stored within the navigation system contains a great number of predefined POIs, which are indicated on the map (if activated, see *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *178*). You may also store individual POIs within the system, see "Creating and Downloading User Defined POIs (My POIs)" in *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *178*.

Those POIs are selectable as destinations via the POI main category My POIs.

To select a POI as a destination for route guidance, select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar and then select **POIs**. A list for search area selection is displayed.

Setting a Search Location

Select one of the options.



Note

The options 'POIs along Route' and 'POIs near Destination' are only available when route guidance is active.

If 'POIs at Another Location' is selected, a keyboard is displayed.

For a detailed description on the keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Enter the desired location and confirm your entry. A list of POI categories is displayed.

Searching POIs via Categories

Select one of the main categories in the list. A list with subcategories is displayed.

To display all POIs available in the main category, select **List All**. Scroll through the list and select the desired POI.

To display all POIs within one subcategory, select the subcategory.

Scroll through the list and select the desired POI. The destination details view is displayed.

For more information on the POI selected, touch Info in the top right corner of the screen.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

Searching POIs via Name Input

To search for a particular POI, a category or a specific location, select **Spell Name** in the POI main categories list or in one of the subcategory lists.

A keyboard is displayed. For a detailed description on the keyboards see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Enter the desired name or category. Select ✓ to confirm your input. The destination details view is displayed.

For more information on the POI selected, touch Info in the top right corner of the screen.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

Recent Destinations List

Select **RECENT**. A list of all recently entered destinations is displayed.

Select one of the entries. The destination details view is displayed.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

Contacts List

Select **CONTACTS**. The contacts list is displayed.

Quick Function Icon

If there is only one address stored for a contact, a quick route icon is displayed next to the entry in the Contacts list.

Select 🏁 to directly display the destination details view.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

Contact Details View

If there is more than one address stored for a contact, select the desired contact's entry. The contact details view is displayed.

Select one of the addresses stored for the contact. The destination details view is displayed.

To start route guidance, select **Go**.

Selecting an Address from the Map

Tap on the desired location on the map. The map centres around this location.

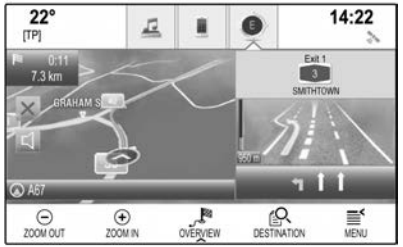
A red symbol is displayed at the location and the corresponding address is shown on a label.

Tap on the label. The destination details view is displayed. To start route guidance, select **Go**.

Waypoint Trips

A waypoint is an intermediate destination that is considered in the calculation of a route to its final destination.

To create a waypoint trip, you may add one or several waypoints. Enter or select the final destination of your waypoint trip and start route guidance.

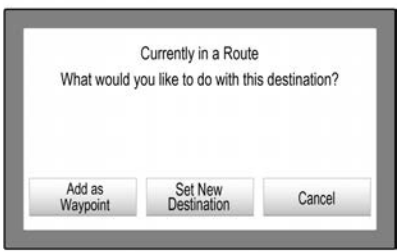


While under active route guidance, select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar of the map view.

Alternatively, touch the arrow symbol indicating your next turning manoeuvre on the right side of the screen to display the Route Guidance menu.

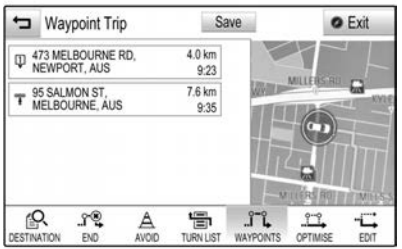
Select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar of the Route Guidance menu. Enter or select a new address.

Select **Go**. You are prompted with a message.



Select **Add as Waypoint**. The route is recalculated and the new destination is added as a waypoint to the current route.

If desired, enter further waypoints as described above.



To save the entire route with waypoints, select **Save**.

The waypoint trip is saved in the contacts list in the Saved Trips folder and designated according to its final destination. The saved waypoint trip can be recalled via the contacts list.

For a detailed description on how to edit a waypoint trip see *Guidance* ⇨ *190*.

New Destination

To set a new destination, you may cancel route guidance to the current destination and then enter a new destination. Or you may directly enter a new destination.

While under active route guidance, select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar of the map view.

Alternatively, touch the arrow symbol indicating your next turning manoeuvre on the right side of the screen to display the route guidance menu. Select **DESTINATION** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu.

Enter or select a new address. Select **Go**.

You are prompted with a message. Select **Set New Destination**. The route is recalculated and the new destination is set.

Calling a Destination

After entering a destination and before starting route guidance, the destination details view is displayed.

To initiate a phone call to the selected location, select **Call**.

Note

The Call screen button is only available if a phone number is stored for the location.

Storing Destinations

Contacts Entry

After entering a destination and before starting route guidance, the destination details view is displayed.

To save the destination in the contacts list, select **Save**.

For a detailed description on how to save an address in the contacts list see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Note

The Save screen button is only available if the address has not yet been stored in the system.

Favourite

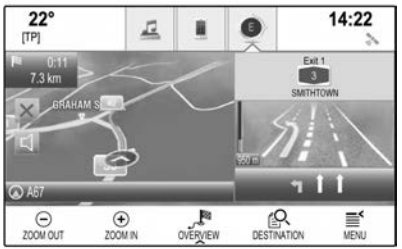
Favourites may be stored from almost all screen views. For a detailed description on how to store destination favourites see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Guidance

Route guidance is provided by the navigation system through visual instructions and voice prompts (voice guidance).

Visual Instructions

Visual instructions are provided on the displays.



Navigation Voice Prompts

Navigation voice prompts announce which direction to follow when approaching an intersection at which you need to turn. To activate the voice prompts function and set the volume, see "Navigation voice settings" below.

Starting and Cancelling Route Guidance

Starting Route Guidance

To start route guidance to a new destination chosen, select **Go** in the destination details view.

To directly start route guidance to the last destination chosen, select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Resume to**.

Route guidance to the last destination selected is restarted.

Cancelling Route Guidance

To cancel route guidance, you may optionally:

- Touch **X** on the navigation map screen.
- Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Cancel Route**.
- Touch the arrow symbol indicating your next turning manoeuvre on the right side of the screen to display the route guidance menu. Select **END** in the interaction selector bar.

Navigation Voice Settings

Mute

To temporarily mute the output of navigation voice prompts, select on the left side of the map screen. The icon changes to . To unmute the system, select again.

Voice Prompts

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Navigation Voice Preferences** to display the submenu.

If Voice Prompts - On is set, navigation voice prompts are read out by the system during active route guidance. Set **Voice Prompts - On** or **Voice Prompts - Off**.

If set to Off, no navigation voice prompts are provided by the system.

Voice Prompts During Phone Calls

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Navigation Voice Preferences** to display the submenu.

Select **Prompts During Phone Calls**.

If On is selected, navigation voice prompts are also read out during phone calls.

If Off is selected, no voice prompts are given out.

If Beeps is selected, a beep sounds instead of the announcement.

Volume

To adjust the volume of the voice prompts, select **–** or **+**.

Route Settings

Select **MENU** in the interaction selector bar and then select **Routing Preferences** to display the submenu.

Route Style

To define by what criteria a route may be calculated, select **Route Style**. Select **Fast**, **Eco Friendly** or **Short** from the list.

If Eco Friendly has been selected, the eco-friendly route style may be adapted to the load of the vehicle. Select **Edit Eco Profile** to display the submenu.

Repeatedly select **Roof Load** and **Trailer** to toggle between the available load options.

Set the options as needed.

Road Selection

Select from the list which road types may be included in the calculation of the route.

Route Modification

To modify the route during active route guidance, touch the arrow symbol indicating your next turning manoeuvre on the right side of the screen. The route guidance menu is displayed.

Note

The route guidance menu may only be displayed if route guidance is active.

The route guidance menu provides additional options to change route settings during active route guidance.

Displaying the Turn List

The turn list displays all streets on the calculated route, starting from the current location. Select **TURN LIST** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu.

The turn list is displayed and the next manoeuvre is read out by the system.

Each list entry may show the following information:

- Name of the street, motorway or motorway junction.
- Direction arrow.
- Distance to the next street on the route.
- Estimated arrival time to reach the next street.

To display all available information on a particular list item, select the list item and then select **Info** in the top line of the screen.

Excluding Streets from Route Guidance

After route guidance has been started, you may exclude streets from the previously calculated route. The route is then recalculated bypassing the streets excluded.

Select **AVOID** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu. The turn list is displayed.

Select the street, motorway or motorway junction you wish to avoid. You are prompted with a message.

Select the desired distance option.

The respective street or motorway is displayed in the Avoided Areas section on top of the turn list indicated by a red ✓.

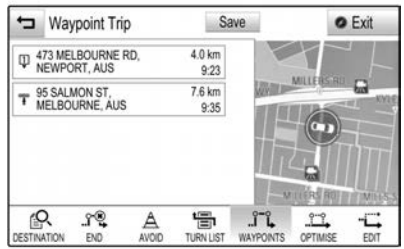
To re-include the avoided street or motorway into the route, deselect the list item.

Displaying the Waypoint List

If you are in a waypoint trip, the route guidance menu comprises additional menu functions for waypoint trip modification.

The waypoint list displays all waypoints of the calculated waypoint trip, starting with the next upcoming waypoint.

Select **WAYPOINTS** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu. The waypoints list is displayed.



Each list entry may show the following information:

- Name or address of the waypoint.
- Distance to the next waypoint.
- Estimated arrival time to reach the next waypoint.

Editing the Waypoint Trip

To arrange a waypoint trip as desired, select **EDIT** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu. The waypoints list is displayed.

To change the position of the waypoints within the list, select ▼ or ▲ next to the list items.

To delete a waypoint from the list, select **X**.

Select **Save** at the top of the screen to save the changes.

Optimising the Waypoint Trip

If several waypoints have been added and the waypoint trip has been edited several times, you may want to rearrange the waypoints in the most efficient order.

Select **OPTIMISE** in the interaction selector bar of the route guidance menu.

Wait until the waypoints list has been updated. Select **Save** at the top of the screen to save the changes.

Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition (General Information)

Embedded Speech Recognition

The infotainment system's embedded speech recognition enables you to operate various functions of the infotainment system via voice input.

It recognises commands and numeric sequences independently of the speaker.

The commands and numeric sequences can be spoken without a voice pause between the individual words. In the event of incorrect operation or commands, the speech recognition gives visual and/or acoustic feedback and requests you to re-enter the desired command.

Apart from this, the speech recognition acknowledges important commands and will query the voice input if necessary.

In general, there are different ways to speak commands for performing the desired actions.

Note

To ensure that conversations inside the vehicle do not lead to unintentional triggering of the system functions, the speech recognition does not start until it has been activated.

Input Order for Destination Addresses

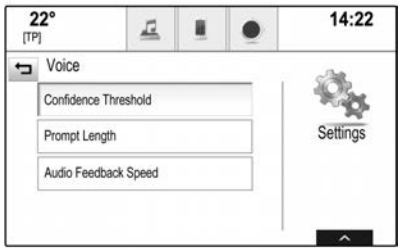
The order in which the parts of an address need to be entered using the speech recognition system is given by the system.

Setting up Speech Recognition

Several settings and adaptations for the embedded speech recognition of the infotainment system can be performed.

Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.

Select **Voice** item to enter the submenu.



Confidence Threshold

Depending on the option selected in the corresponding submenu, the speech recognition appears more or less 'confident' in correctly understanding your commands.

- **Confirm More**: If selected, the system asks you relatively often to confirm your commands. Consequently, the system performs the correct action in most cases.
- **Confirm Less**: If selected, the system asks you less often to confirm your voice inputs.

Consequently, the system might sometimes misinterpret your commands and not perform the correct action.

Note

When starting to use the speech recognition, it may be advantageous to use the Confirm More setting. As you get more experienced and become familiar with how to pronounce your commands in a way so that the speech recognition understands you correctly, it may be advantageous to use the Confirm Less setting.

Prompt Length

The length and the level of detail of the questions and statements the speech recognition gives can be adjusted in the corresponding submenu.

Audio Feedback Speed

The speed with which the speech recognition asks questions or makes statements can be adjusted in the corresponding submenu.

If Medium is selected, the system's speech rate corresponds to natural speech.

Note

When starting to use the speech recognition, it may be advantageous to use the Long setting. As you get more experienced, it may be advantageous to use the Short setting.

Display "What Can I Say?" Tips

Depending on whether you want possible speech commands to be displayed on the screen, set Display "What Can I Say?" Tips to **On** or **Off**.

Voice Pass-thru Application

The infotainment system's voice pass-thru application allows access to the speech recognition commands on your smartphone.

The availability of this function depends on your smartphone. For more information on compatibility, see www.holden.com.au

Voice Recognition (Usage)

Embedded Speech Recognition

Activating Speech Recognition

Note

Speech recognition is not available during an active phone call.

Activation via the steering wheel button:

Press on the steering wheel.

The audio system mutes, a voice output message prompts you to say a command, and help menus with the most important commands currently available are shown on the infotainment system display.

As soon as the speech recognition is ready for voice input, a beep is heard. The speech recognition symbol in the upper left corner of the help menu changes from white to red.

You can now say a voice command to initiate a system function (e.g. playing a preset radio station).

Activation via the infotainment system display VOICE screen button:

Select **VOICE** in the interaction selector bar of an infotainment system display main menu.

The audio system mutes, a voice output message prompts you to say a command, and a help menu with the most important commands currently available is shown on the infotainment system display.

As soon as the speech recognition is ready for voice input, a beep is heard. The speech recognition symbol on the right side of the help menu changes from black to red.

You can now say a voice command, see description above.

Adjusting the Volume of Voice Prompts

Press + or – on the steering wheel to increase or decrease volume.

Interrupting a Voice Prompt

As an experienced user, you can interrupt a voice prompt by briefly pressing on the steering wheel. A beep is heard immediately, the speech recognition symbol changes to red, and a command can be stated without having to wait.

Cancelling a Dialogue Sequence

There are various ways to cancel a dialogue sequence and to deactivate the speech recognition:

- Say **Cancel** or **Exit**.
- Press on the steering wheel.
- If the speech recognition session was started via the VOICE screen button on the centre display, you may alternatively:
  - Press on the infotainment system display.
  - Select or **Exit** in the help menu.

In the following situations, a dialogue sequence is automatically cancelled:

- If you do not say any command for a certain period of time (by default you are prompted three times to say a command).
- If you say commands that are not recognised by the system, by default you are prompted three times to say a correct command.

Operation via Speech Commands

The speech recognition can understand commands that are either naturally stated in sentence form, or direct commands stating the application and the action. For best results:

- Listen for the voice prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or replying.
- Say **Help** or read the example commands on the screen.
- The voice prompt can be interrupted by pressing again.

- Wait for the beep and then speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow. Use short and direct commands.

Usually commands can be spoken in a single command.

For example, "Call David Smith", "Play" followed by the artist or song name, "Tune to" followed by the radio waveband and frequency/ station name, or "Find address" followed by the address e.g. "123 Main Road, Smithtown".

For complex commands or when information is missing, the system starts a dialogue sequence.

When searching for a Point of Interest, only major chains may be selected by name. Chains are businesses with at least 20 locations.

For other POIs, say the name of a category, e.g. **Restaurants**, **Shopping centres**, or **Hospital**.

If you say **Phone** or **Phone commands**, the system understands that a phone call is requested and responds with relevant questions until enough details are gathered.

If the phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example "Call David Smith at work".

Selecting List Items

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt asks to confirm or select an item from that list. A list item may be manually selected, or by speaking the line number of the item.

The list on a speech recognition screen functions the same as a list on other screens. Manually scrolling the list on a screen during a speech recognition session suspends the current speech recognition event and plays a prompt like "Make your selection from the list using the manual controls, press the back button on the faceplate, or press the back screen button to try again".

If no manual selection is made within 15 seconds, the speech recognition session terminates, you are prompted with a message, and the former screen is redisplayed.

The "Back" Command

To return to the previous menu, optionally: say **Back**, press < **BACK** on the control panel, or press ⮌.

The "Help" Command

After saying **Help**, the help prompt for the current screen is read aloud. Additionally, the prompt is displayed on the screen.

To interrupt the help prompt, press . A beep is heard. You may say a command.

Voice Pass-thru Application

The voice pass-thru application of the infotainment system allows access to the voice recognition commands on your smartphone.

Activating Speech Recognition

Press and hold on the steering wheel until a speech recognition icon is displayed.

Adjusting Voice Prompt Volume

Turn on the control panel or press + or – on the steering wheel to increase or decrease the volume.

Deactivating Speech Recognition

Press on the steering wheel. The speech recognition session ends.

Phone

Bluetooth

General Information

The phone portal allows you to have mobile phone conversations via a vehicle microphone and the vehicle speakers as well as operating the most important mobile phone functions via the infotainment system in the vehicle.

To use the phone portal, the mobile phone must be connected to the infotainment system via Bluetooth®.

Not all phone functions are supported by every mobile phone. The usable phone functions depend on the relevant mobile phone and network provider. You can find further information on this in the operating instructions for your mobile phone, or you can enquire about them with your network provider.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

⚠ Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Understanding Bluetooth Wireless Technology

Bluetooth wireless technology establishes a wireless link between two devices supported with Bluetooth.

Terminology:

- **Pairing:** To create a secure link between the infotainment system and a Bluetooth device. Multiple devices can be paired and retained in the infotainment system.
- **Connection:** A previously paired device can be connected which enables the Bluetooth functions to be used, such as hands-free phone, audio, etc. One device can be connected at a time.

After the initial pairing, the device can connect automatically to the infotainment system each time you turn them on.

Bluetooth allows wireless transmission of information within close range by using 2.45 GHz frequency short-distance wireless telecommunication technologies.

Note

- There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.
- Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.
- Any inquiries regarding your phone's Bluetooth functionality, refer to the device manual.

Pairing and Connecting Bluetooth

To use the Bluetooth feature, make sure the Bluetooth on your device is turned on and your device is in discoverable mode. Refer to the user guide for the Bluetooth device.

Pairing via the Settings Application

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel. Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu.
2. Select **Pair Device**.

   Alternatively, select **Device Management** to display the device list and then select **Pair Device**.
3. A message is displayed on the infotainment system indicating the name and PIN code of the infotainment system.
4. Start Bluetooth searching on the Bluetooth device to be paired.
5. Confirm the pairing procedure:
   - If the SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) is supported: Compare the PIN code (if demanded) and confirm the messages on the infotainment system and the Bluetooth device.

- If SSP (secure simple pairing) is not supported: If desired, select Set PIN to change the PIN code of the infotainment system. A keypad is displayed. Enter the new PIN code and confirm your input. Enter the infotainment PIN code on the Bluetooth device and confirm your input.

6. The infotainment system and the device are paired and the device list is displayed.

   If the connection fails, failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

7. If available on the Bluetooth device, phone book and calls lists are downloaded to the infotainment system. If required, confirm the message on your smartphone.

Note

- For the contacts to be read by the infotainment system, they have to be stored in the phone memory of the mobile phone. If this function is not supported by the Bluetooth device, a corresponding message is displayed on the Infotainment system.
- The infotainment system can pair up to five Bluetooth devices.
- If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

Pairing via the Phone Application

1. Press ⌂ and select **PHONE** on the home screen.
2. Select **Pair Device**.
3. Proceed from the previous Step 3 above.
4. If the device has been successfully paired, the phone menu is displayed.

Note

If the Bluetooth connection fails, a failure message is displayed.

Connecting a Paired Device

1. Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen. Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu.
2. Select **Device Management** to display the device list.
3. Select the Bluetooth device you wish to connect.
4. The device is connected and displayed within the Connected field of the device list.

Disconnecting a Device

1. Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen. Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu.
2. Select **Device Management** to display the device list.
3. Select **X** beside the Bluetooth device currently connected. You are prompted with a message.
4. Select **Yes** to disconnect the device.

Deleting the Bluetooth Device

If you no longer need to use the Bluetooth device, you can delete it.

1. Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen. Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu.
2. Select **Device Management** to display the device list.
3. Select **–** beside the Bluetooth device to be deleted. You are prompted with a message.
4. Select **Yes** to delete the device.

Text Messaging

The Text application allows text messages to be received and replied to via the infotainment system.

Note

If the vehicle is travelling faster than 8 km/h, some functions of the text application may not be available.

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites must be met in order to use the Text application:

- The Bluetooth function of the phone must be activated.
- The phone must be paired and connected to the infotainment system. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *198*.
- The phone must support Bluetooth Message Access Profile (BT MAP).
- Depending on the phone:
  - It may be required to set the device to "visible".
  - It may be required to manually allow access to the text messages function on the phone.
  - Settings such as “Show Notifications” or “Allow Notifications” (iPhone) or “Accept and Activate Message Access Profile” (Android) must be on. See the operating instructions for the device or go to the Owner's page on the Holden website for assistance.

Starting the Text Application

Press ⌂ and select **TEXT** on the home screen.

If a new text message is received, you are prompted with a message. Select one of the screen buttons to enter the **TEXT** application.

Note

Text message alerts are only displayed if Text Alerts in the text settings menu is set to **On**.

Listening to a Message

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar.

The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

Note

Depending on the phone, not all text messages stored on the phone are displayed in the Inbox.

To listen to a message, select beside the message.

Alternatively, select the desired message to display the message view. Select **LISTEN** in the interaction selector bar.

Viewing a Message

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar. The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

Select the desired message to display the complete message text.

Calling the Sender

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar. The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

Select the desired message to display the message view.

Select **CALL** in the interaction selector bar. The sender of the message is called.

Replying to a Message

Note

Depending on the phone, the reply function may not be supported.

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar. The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

Select the desired message to display the message view.

Select **REPLY** in the interaction selector bar. A list of predefined messages is displayed.

Select the desired predefined text message. If none of the predefined messages serves your purpose, you can write a new message: see "Manage Predefined Messages" below.

Deleting a Message

Select **INBOX** in the interaction selector bar. The text messages stored on the phone are displayed in a list.

Select the desired message to display the message view.

To delete the text message, select **DELETE** in the interaction selector bar.

Device List

Select **PHONES** to display the device list.

Text Settings

Select **SETTINGS** to enter the Settings menu.

Text Alerts

If you wish an alert to pop-up when a new text message is received, set **Text Alerts - On**.

Manage Predefined Messages

Select **Manage Predefined Messages** to display a list of all predefined messages.

Adding a New Message:

Note
Predefined messages can only be entered when the vehicle is stationary.

Select **Add New Predefined Message**. A keyboard is displayed.

Enter the desired message text and confirm your input. The new message is added to the list of predefined messages.

Deleting a Predefined Message:

To delete a predefined message, select **–** beside the message you wish to delete.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Apple CarPlay™ and/or Android Auto™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. The infotainment display will indicate a PROJECTION icon on the Home screen.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play™ store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Apple iPhone® or Android™ phone by using a genuine USB connection cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use your device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work. See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *87*.

Note

Ensure SIRI is activated on your iPhone.

The PROJECTION icon on the Home screen will change to Android Auto™ or Apple CarPlay™ depending on the phone. Apple CarPlay and/or Android Auto may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, touch the CARPLAY or ANDROID AUTO icon on the Home screen to launch.

Activating / Deactivating Phone Projection

Press ⌂ and then select **SETTINGS**. Scroll through the list and select **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto** to display a submenu. Select **On** or **Off**. To display a list of all devices registered for this function, select **Manage – – Devices**.

For further information on how to set up Apple CarPlay and Android Auto in the vehicle, see www.holden.com.au.

CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. For further information, support and compatible devices, see www.apple.com or www.google.com. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Apple CarPlay™ is a trademark of Apple Inc., Android Auto™ is a trademark of Google Inc.

Hands-Free Phone

Once a connection via Bluetooth has been set up between your mobile phone and the infotainment system, you can operate many of the phone functions.

Note

Not every mobile phone supports all functions of the Phone application. Therefore, deviations from the range of functions described below are possible.

Phone Application

Press ⌂ and select **PHONE** on the home screen.

The Phone application comprises different views accessible via tabs. Select the desired tab.

Note

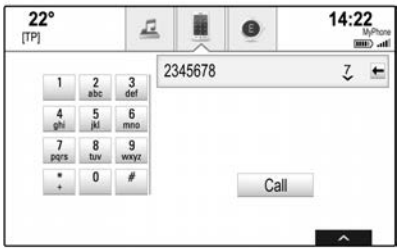
The phone main menu is only available if a mobile phone is paired and connected to the infotainment system via Bluetooth. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *198*.

Initiating a Phone Call

Keypad

Press ⌂ and select **PHONE** on the home screen.

Select **KEYPAD** in the interaction selector bar. The keypad is displayed.



Enter the desired number and select **Call**. The number is dialled.

To dial a speed dial number, enter the number and touch and hold the last digit. The number is dialled.

Contacts

Press ⌂ and select **PHONE** on the home screen.

Select **CONTACTS** in the interaction selector bar. The contacts list is displayed.

For a detailed description of the contacts lists see *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Scroll to the desired contacts entry.

Quick Function

If there is only one number stored for a contact, a quick dial icon is displayed next to the entry in the Contacts list. Select ✆ to directly initiate the call.

Contact Details View

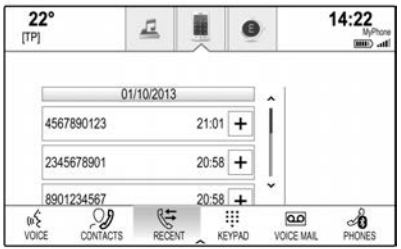
If more than one number is stored for a contact, select the contact. The contact details view is displayed.

Select one of the phone numbers stored for the contact. The number is dialled.

Calls Lists

Press ⌂ and select **PHONE** on the home screen.

Select **RECENT** in the interaction selector bar. The recent calls list is displayed.



Note

Missed calls are highlighted in red in the recent calls list and indicated by a ⚠ next to the phone icon in the application tray.

Select one of the phone numbers stored in the recent calls list. The number is dialled.

Favourites

Reveal the favourites page. As required, scroll through the pages. Select the desired favourite screen button. See *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Incoming Phone Call

Taking a Phone Call

If an audio source is active when a call comes in, the audio source is muted and remains muted until the call is ended.

A message with the caller's name or number is displayed at the bottom of the screen.

To answer the call, select **Answer** in the message.

Rejecting a Phone Call

To reject the call, select **Ignore** in the message.

Changing the Ringtone

Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.

Select **Bluetooth** to display the submenu and then select **Ringtones**. A list of all phones paired to the infotainment system is displayed.

Select the desired phone. A list of all ringtones available for the phone is displayed.

Select the desired ringtone.

Functions During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the in-call view is displayed.

Ending a Phone Call

Select **End** to end the call.

Deactivating the Microphone

Select **Mute** to temporarily deactivate the microphone. The screen button changes to Unmute.

To reactivate the microphone, select **Unmute**.

Deactivating the Hands-free Function

To continue the conversation on your mobile phone, select **Handset**. The screen button changes to Handsfree.

To reactivate the hands-free function, select **Handsfree**.

Second Phone Call

Initiating a Second Phone Call

To initiate a second phone call, select **Add** in the in-call view. The phone menu is displayed.

Initiate a second phone call as described in “Initiating a Phone Call” above.

To cancel the initiation of the second call and return to the in-call view, select **Current Call**.

Both calls are displayed in the in-call view.

Second Incoming Phone Call

A message with the caller's name or number is displayed at the bottom of the in-call view. Select **Answer** or **Ignore** in the message.

Ending the Phone Calls

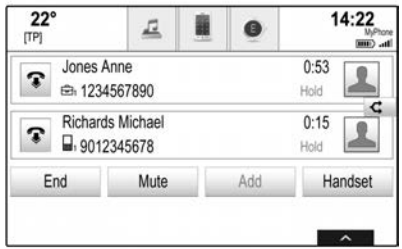
To end both calls, select **End** at the bottom of the screen.

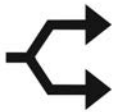
To end just one of the calls, select the screen button next to the call.

Conference Call

Select the screen button to merge the two calls. Both calls become active.

The screen button changes.

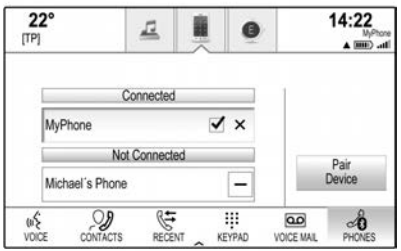




To unmerge the calls, select the screen button.

Phones

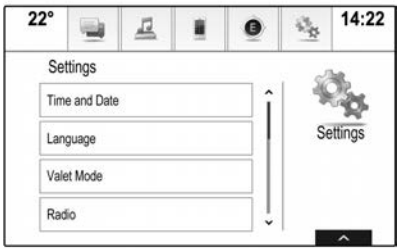
Select **PHONES** in the interaction selector bar to display the device list.



For a detailed description see *Bluetooth* ⇨ *198*.

Settings

Various settings for the infotainment system and vehicle can be made via the SETTINGS menu. Press ⌂ and select **SETTINGS** on the home screen.



Note

Settings menus and functions may vary depending on your vehicle option.

Time and Date

To set the time and date see *Clock* ⇨ *86*.

Language

The language currently active is marked with ✓.

Valet Mode

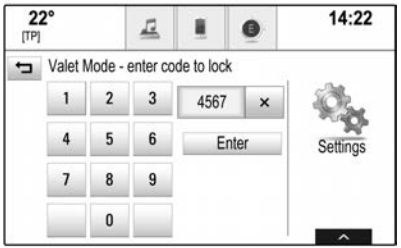
If valet mode is activated, all vehicle displays are locked and no changes may be performed within the system.

Note

Vehicle-related messages and the rear view camera remain enabled.

Locking the System

Scroll through the list and select **Valet Mode**. A keypad is displayed.

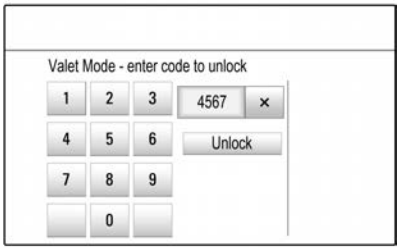


Enter a four-digit code and select **Enter**.

The keypad is re-displayed. Confirm the first input, by re-entering the four-digit code and select **Lock**. The system is locked.

Unlocking the System

Turn the infotainment system on. A keypad is displayed.



Enter the four-digit code and select **Unlock**. The system is unlocked.

Forgotten PIN Code

To reset the PIN code to the default setting, contact your dealer.

Radio

Adjusts the radio application settings. See *Operation* ⇨ *156*.

Vehicle

Adjusts the vehicle personalisation settings. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Bluetooth

Displays the Bluetooth settings. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *198*.

Apple CarPlay / Android Auto

Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto settings. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *203*.

Voice

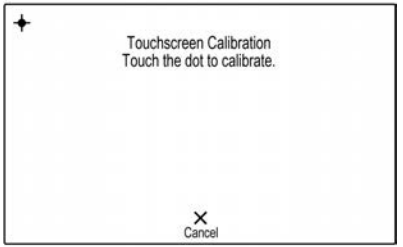
Displays the voice recognition settings.
See *Voice Recognition (General Information)* ⇨ *194* or *Voice Recognition (Usage)* ⇨ *195*.

Display

Scroll through the list and select **Display**.

Select **Mode** to enter the submenu. Depending on the external lighting conditions, select **Day** or **Night**. If you select **Auto**, the system automatically adjusts the display.

Select **Calibrate Touchscreen** to enter the submenu.



Follow the instructions on the screen, touching the points indicated. The touchscreen is calibrated.

Select **Turn Display Off** to turn off the display.

To turn the display back on, touch the touchscreen or press a button on the control panel.

Rear Camera

Displays the rear vision camera settings.

1. Select **Rear Camera**.
   - Guidance Lines : Select the Guidance Lines feature to turn on or off.
   - Rear Park Assist Symbols : Select the Rear Park Assist Symbols feature to turn on or off.

See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC)* ⇨ *245*.

Return to Factory Settings

Scroll through the list and select **Return to Factory Settings**.

Restore Vehicle Settings

Select **Restore Vehicle Settings** to restore all vehicle personalisation settings. A warning message is displayed. Select **Restore**. The settings are reset.

Clear All Private Data

Select **Clear All Private Data** to delete the following data:

- Paired Bluetooth devices.
- Stored phone books.

- Vehicle contacts list.
- Destination lists.
- Favourites.

A warning message is displayed. Select **Delete**. The data is deleted.

Restore Radio Settings

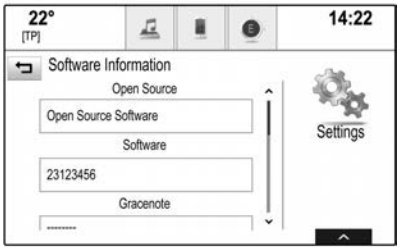
Select **Restore Radio Settings** to reset the following data:

- Tone settings.
- Volume settings.
- Speech settings.
- Application tray.
- Contacts sources.

A warning message is displayed. Select **Restore**. The settings are reset.

Software Information

Scroll through the list and select **Software Information**.



A list of version numbers of all items loaded to the system is displayed.

System update To update your system software, contact your dealer.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Climate Control Systems 212
Air Conditioning System 212
Electronic Climate Control System 214

Air Vents
Adjustable Air Vents 220
Fixed Air Vents 220

Maintenance
Air Intake 221
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 221
Service 221

Climate Control Systems

Depending on model, the vehicle may be equipped with an air conditioning system or electronic climate control system.

Air Conditioning System

Controls

The following features are available:

- Control dial for temperature
- Air distribution , , .
- : Fan speed.
- : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- **A/C** : Turns the air conditioning on or off.
- : Manual air recirculation.
- : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors, if equipped. See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *46*.

Air Conditioning (A/C)

Press **A/C** to turn the air conditioning on of off. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and the fan is operating.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when the outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle. This is normal.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

When air conditioning is on, the system may inhibit an Auto-stop.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*.

Air Recirculation

Press to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. The quality of passenger

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

When operating without air conditioning, air humidity increases and mist may form inside the windows.

In warm and very humid ambient conditions, mist may form on the outside of the windscreen when cold air is directed towards it. If this occurs, activate the windscreen wipers and deactivate .

Maximum Cooling

Briefly open the windows so that hot air can disperse quickly.

- Press **A/C**.
- Press air circulation button on.
- Press air distribution button .
- Set the temperature control to coldest level.
- Set the fan speed to highest level.
- Open all vents.

Window Demisting and Defrosting

- Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Set the fan speed to highest level.
- Set the temperature control to warmest level.
- Open the side vents as required and direct them towards the door windows.

Note

If is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until is pressed again.

If is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Auto-stop will be inhibited until is pressed again or the fan is turned off.

If is pressed while the engine is an Auto-stop, the engine will restart automatically.

If is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Auto-stop, the engine will restart automatically.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*.

Electronic Climate Control System

The dual zone climate control system allows individual temperature settings for the driver and front passenger sides.

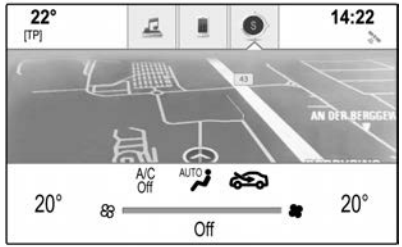
In automatic mode, temperature, fan speed and air distribution are regulated automatically.

Controls

The following features are available:

- Control dial for driver temperature adjustment.
- Control dial for front passenger temperature adjustment.
- Air distribution , , .
- : Fan speed.
- **ON/OFF** : Turns the climate control system on or off.
- **A/C** : Turns the air conditioning on or off.
- **AUTO** : Automatic mode.
- : Manual air recirculation.
- : Windscreen demisting and defrosting.
- **SYNC** : Driver and passenger temperature synchronisation.
- REAR : Heated rear window and exterior mirrors. See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *46*.
- : Heated seats. See *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *53*.
- : Heated steering wheel. See *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *82*.

Activated functions are indicated by an LED.



Each setting change is shown in the infotainment system display for a few seconds.

The electronic climate control system is only fully operational when the engine is running.

Automatic Mode

Basic settings for automatic control with maximum comfort:

- Press **AUTO**. Air distribution and fan speed are regulated automatically.
- Open all air vents to allow optimised air distribution in automatic mode.
- Press **A/C** to switch on optimal cooling and demisting. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.
- Set the preselected temperatures separately for the driver and front passenger using the left and right control dials.

The fan speed regulation in automatic mode can be changed in the Settings menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

menu.

Temperature Preselection

Set the temperatures separately for the driver and front passenger to the desired value using the left and right control dials.

- The dial on the passenger side changes the temperature for the front passenger side.
- The dial on the driver's side changes the temperature for the driver's side, or for both sides depending on activation of synchronisation (**SYNC**).

Temperature is indicated in each dial.

If the minimum temperature **Lo** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum cooling if the A/C is on.

If the maximum temperature **Hi** is set, the climate control system runs at maximum heating.

Note

If A/C is switched on, reducing the set cabin temperature can cause the engine to restart from an Autostop or inhibit an Autostop. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*.

Dual Zone Temperature Synchronisation

Press **SYNC** to link the front passenger's side temperature setting to the driver's side. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

- If the driver's side control dial is adjusted, both sides will be set at the same temperature.
- If the front passenger side control dial is adjusted, synchronisation is deactivated and individual temperatures can be set.

Window Demisting and Defrosting

Press . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

- Temperature and air distribution are set automatically and the fan runs at high speed.
- To return to previous mode press again. To return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.

Switch on heated rear window REAR. See *Heated Rear Window* ⇨ *46*.

Note

If is pressed while the engine is running, an Autostop will be inhibited until is pressed again.

If is pressed with the fan switched on and the engine running, an Auto-stop will be inhibited until is pressed again or the fan is turned off.

If is pressed while the engine is an Auto-stop, the engine will restart automatically.

If is pressed with the fan switched on while the engine is in an Auto-stop, the engine will restart automatically.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*.

System ON/OFF

Cooling, fan and automatic mode can be switched off by pressing **ON/OFF**. When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button is off. Activate the system by pressing

ON/OFF, **A/C** or **AUTO**. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Manual Settings

Climate control system settings can be changed by activating the following functions as described below. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Changing a setting will deactivate Automatic mode.

Fan Speed

Press the left button to decrease fan speed, or the right button to increase fan speed. The fan speed is indicated by the number of LEDs illuminated in the button.

Pressing the left button for longer turns the fan and cooling off.

Press the right button for longer and the fan runs at maximum speed.

To return to automatic mode press **AUTO**.

Air Distribution

Press the following buttons for desired adjustment:

: Windscreen and front door windows. Air conditioning is activated in the background to help preventing the windows from fogging.

: Head area via adjustable air vents.

: Foot well and windscreen.

All combinations are possible. To return to automatic air distribution press **AUTO**.

Air Conditioning (A/C)

Press **A/C** to turn the air conditioning on of off. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Cooling is only functional when the engine is running and the climate control system fan is operating.

The air conditioning system cools and dehumidifies (dries) when the outside temperature is above a specific level. Therefore, condensation may form and drip from under the vehicle. This is normal.

If no cooling or drying is required, switch off the cooling system for fuel saving reasons.

When the cooling system is switched off, no engine restart will be requested by the climate control system during an Auto-stop.

Exception: The demist system is activated and outside temperature above 0°C requests a restart.

See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*. The display will indicate A/C ON when cooling is activated or A/C OFF when the cooling is deactivated.

Manual Air Recirculation

Press ⟲ to activate air recirculation mode. The LED in the button illuminates to indicate activation.

Press ⟲ again to deactivate air recirculation mode.

⚠ Warning

The exchange of fresh air is reduced in air recirculation mode. The quality of passenger

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

compartment air deteriorates, which may cause the vehicle occupants to feel drowsy.

When operating without air conditioning, air humidity increases and mist may form inside the windows.

In warm and very humid ambient conditions, mist may form on the outside of the windscreen when cold air is directed towards it. If this occurs, activate the windscreen wipers and deactivate .

Automatic Air Recirculation

If equipped, an air humidity sensor automatically sets the system to external air if internal air humidity is too high.

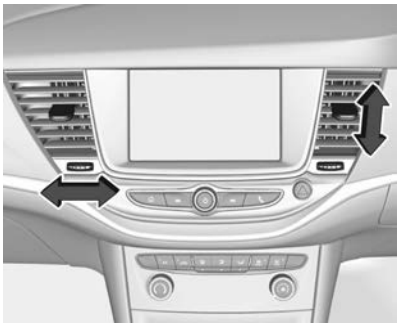
Basic Settings

Some settings can be changed in the Settings menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Air Vents

Adjustable Air Vents

At least one air vent must be open while the climate control system is on.



Centre air vents in the instrument panel.

To open or close the vent turn the wheel. Direct air flow by tilting and swivelling the slats.

Outer vents in the instrument panel.

To open or close the vent turn the wheel. Direct air flow by tilting and swivelling the slats.

⚠ Warning

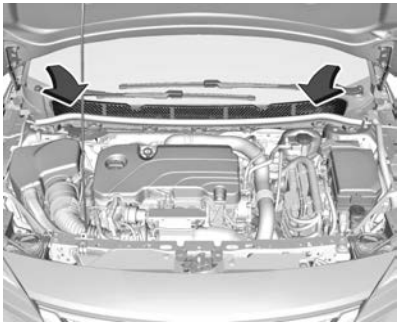
Do not attach objects to the vents. Damage or injury may occur.

Fixed Air Vents

Additional air vents are located beneath the windscreen and door windows and in the footwells.

Maintenance

Air Intake



The air intake in front of the windscreen in the engine compartment must be kept clear to allow air intake.

Remove any leaves, dirt or snow.

Cabin Air Filter

Change the cabin air filter (pollen filter) according to the maintenance schedule for maximum effect. Refer to your Service and Warranty booklet.

Note

If driving in dusty conditions, the cabin air filter may require more frequent maintenance. Contact a dealer.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

To ensure continuously efficient performance, the air conditioner must be operated for a few minutes once a month, irrespective of the weather and time of year.

Service

For optimal cooling performance, have the climate control system serviced according to the maintenance schedule. Refer to your Service and Warranty booklet.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving Environment 223

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 224
Ignition Positions 224
Starting the Engine 226
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 228
Overrun Cut-Off 228
Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature 228
Parking 231

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 232
Catalytic Converter 232

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 233
Transmission Display 233
Shift Lever 233
Manual Mode 235
Electronic Driving Programs 235
Fault 236
Interruption of Power Supply 236

Manual Transmission
Manual Transmission 237

Brakes
Brakes 238
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 238
Parking Brake 239
Electric Parking Brake 239
Brake Assist 241
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 241

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control System (TCS) 241
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 242
Sport Mode 244

Driver Assistance Systems
Driver Assistance Systems . . . 244
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) . . . 245
Parking Assist 247
Advanced Parking Assist 252
Cruise Control 256
Speed Limiter 258
Adaptive Cruise Control 260
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 268
Following Distance Indication System 270
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 271
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 274
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 276

Fuel
Fuel 278
Recommended Fuel 279
Filling the Tank 280

Trailer Towing
Trailer Towing 281
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . 284

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 285

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before Entering the Vehicle

Check the windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before Driving Off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust the rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten the seat belts.
5. Check the instrument cluster indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on and go off once the engine is started. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *88*.

Control of the Vehicle

Never Coast with the Engine Not Running

Many systems will not function in this situation, e.g. brake servo unit, power steering.

Driving in this manner is a danger to yourself and others.

Idle Boost

If charging of the vehicle battery is required due to the battery's condition, the power output of the alternator must be increased. This may be achieved by an idle boost which may be audible.

Floor Mats

To ensure that pedal travel is uninhibited, use only floor mats which fit properly and are fixed by the retainers on the driver's side.

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Steering

If power steering assistance is lost because the engine stops or due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

During the first 1000 km of driving use moderate acceleration, do not make full-throttle starts and do not drive at any one constant speed. Do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

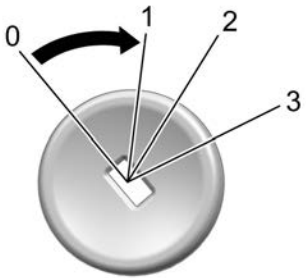
During the first drive, odours may be noticed due to protective wax and oil evaporating off the exhaust system. Park the vehicle in the open for a while after the first drive and avoid inhaling the fumes.

During the running-in period, fuel and engine oil consumption may be slightly higher.

Autostops may be inhibited to allow for charging of the vehicle battery, etc. See *Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*.

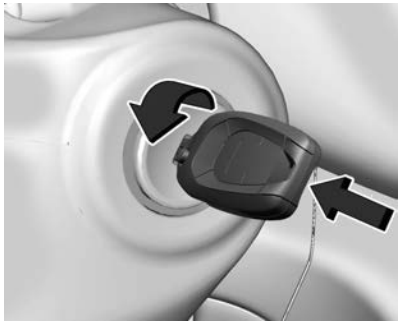
Ignition Positions

Vehicles With Ignition Switch



0 (LOCK) : When the key is in this position, some electrical accessories and the engine are off.

The key can only be inserted and removed from this position.



To turn off the vehicle:

1. When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission or Neutral with a manual transmission.
3. Push the key all the way in towards the steering column, then turn the key to Ignition off.
4. Remove the key.

The steering wheel is automatically locked when the key is removed.

To release the steering lock, re-insert the key and turn it towards the front of the vehicle. If still locked, turn the steering

wheel slightly to the right or left while turning the key towards the front of the vehicle.

1 (ACC) : Steering wheel lock is released, some electrical functions are operable, ignition is off.

2 (ON) : Ignition is on. Instrument cluster indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

3 (START) : Turn the key to this position. Release once the starting procedure begins.

⚠ Warning

Do not turn the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for brakes or steering. Never remove the key while the vehicle is moving, as this will lock the steering.

Vehicles With Engine Start/ Stop Button

Pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button cycles the ignition through the following Modes. The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be inside the vehicle.

Accessory Power Mode

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button once without pressing the brake pedal.

The yellow LED in the button illuminates and the steering wheel lock is released. Some electrical functions are operable, the ignition is off.

Ignition-on Power Mode

Press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for six seconds without pressing the brake pedal.

The green LED in the button illuminates; diesel engine is preheating. Instrument cluster indicators illuminate and most electrical functions are operable.

Engine Start

Either:

- Automatic transmission: Move the shift lever to **P** (Park) and press the brake pedal.
- Manual transmission: Move the shift lever to **N** (Neutral) and press the clutch pedal.

Then press the ENGINE START/ STOP button. Release once the starting procedure begins.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *226*.

Ignition-off

When the vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and for vehicles with automatic transmission, engage **P** (Park).

Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly. Some functions remain active until the driver's door is opened.

Steering Wheel Lock

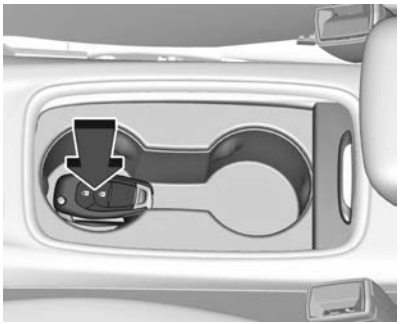
The steering wheel lock activates automatically when:

- The vehicle is stationary.
- The ignition has been turned off.
- The driver's door is opened.

To release the steering wheel lock, open and close driver's door and turn on Accessory Mode or start the engine directly.

Operation in Case of Failure

If the RKE transmitter battery is depleted or the transmitter fails, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) may display a **No Remote Detected** or **Replace Battery in Remote Key** message when you try to start the vehicle.



1. Open the centre console cup holder cover, if equipped.
2. Place the RKE transmitter in the front cup holder with the buttons facing up as shown.

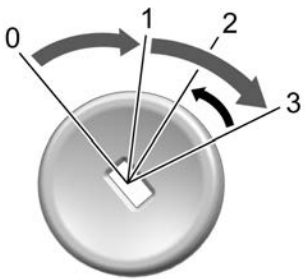
   Other objects, e.g. other keys, transponders, tags, coins, etc. must be removed.
3. Start the engine. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *226*.

To turn off the engine, press the ENGINE START/STOP button again and remove the RKE transmitter from the transmitter pocket.

This option is intended for emergencies only. Replace the RKE transmitter battery as soon as possible, see *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *23*. For unlocking or locking the doors, see *Door Locks* ⇨ *28*.

Starting the Engine

Vehicles With Ignition Switch



1. Apply the park brake firmly.

2. Manual transmission : Press the clutch pedal to the floor and move the shift lever to the neutral position.

   Automatic transmission : Move the shift lever to **P** (Park).

3. Do not operate accelerator pedal.

   Turn the key briefly to position **3** and release: An automatic procedure operates the starter with a short delay until the engine is running.

Before restarting or to switch off the engine, push the key all the way in towards the steering column, then turn the key back to position **0**.

Note

- Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.
- Do not subject the engine to full throttle acceleration or high speeds until it has reached normal operating temperature.

  Premature engine wear or damage may result.

Vehicles With Engine Start/ Stop Button

1. Apply the park brake firmly.
2. Manual transmission : Press the clutch pedal to the floor and move the shift lever to the neutral position.

   Automatic transmission : Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** (Park).

3. Do not operate the accelerator pedal.

   Press the ENGINE START/ STOP button briefly: an automatic starter control procedure operates with a short delay until the engine is running.

To switch off the engine when vehicle is stationary, apply the parking brake and engage **P** (automatic transmission). Press the ENGINE START/STOP button briefly.

Note

- Automatic transmission: If **P** is not engaged a chime will sound.
- Do not press the accelerator pedal while starting the engine.
- Do not subject the engine to full throttle acceleration or high speeds until it has reached normal operating temperature.

  Premature engine wear or damage may result.

Emergency Engine Shut-off During Driving

If the engine needs to be turned off during driving in an emergency situation, press the ENGINE

START/STOP button for more than two seconds or press twice briefly within five seconds.

⚠ Danger

Turning the engine off whilst driving may cause loss of power assistance to the brake and steering systems. Driver assistance systems and airbag systems are disabled. Lighting and tail lamps will extinguish.

Therefore shut off the engine and ignition while driving only in case of an emergency.

Automatic Starter Control

This function controls the engine starting procedure. The driver does not need to hold the ENGINE START/STOP button pressed.

Once applied, the system will continue starting automatically until the engine is running or for a certain period of time.

Due to a checking procedure, there may be a short delay until the engine starts.

Possible reasons for a non-starting engine include:

- Automatic transmission: The brake pedal is not pressed or the shift lever is not in **P**.
- Manual transmission: The clutch pedal is not pressed.
- Time-out occurred.

Turbo Engine Warm-up

Upon engine start-up, the available engine torque may be limited for a short time, especially when the engine temperature is cold. This limitation is to allow the lubrication system to fully protect the engine.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The following electronic systems can operate until the driver's door is opened, or for 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off:

- Power windows.
- Sunroof.
- Power outlets.

Overrun Cut-Off

The fuel supply to the engine is automatically cut-off during an overrun, e.g. when driving with the a gear engaged and the accelerator pedal released.

Depending on driving conditions, the overrun cut-off may be deactivated.

Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature

The engine start-stop system helps to save fuel and reduce the exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, it performs an Autostop and turns off the engine as soon as the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at a traffic light. The ignition remains on.

Activation

The engine start-stop system is available as soon as the engine is started, the vehicle starts-off and the conditions stated further in this section are fulfilled.

Deactivation

The engine start-stop system can be deactivated manually by pressing Ⓐ **OFF**. Deactivation is indicated when the LED in the button illuminates.

Autostop

All engines except 1.4L with manual transmission have Auto-stop. An Auto-stop can be activated at standstill or at low speed up to 5 km/h.

Manual transmission: Activate an Auto-stop as follows:

- Press the clutch pedal.
- Set the shift lever in neutral.
- Release the clutch pedal.

The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Automatic transmission: If the vehicle is at a standstill with pressed brake pedal, Auto-stop is activated automatically. The engine will be switched off while the ignition stays on.

Indication

An Autostop is indicated by the needle at the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer. After restarting, the engine speed is indicated.

During an Autostop, heating and brake performance will be maintained.

Conditions for an Autostop

The engine start-stop system checks if each of the following conditions is fulfilled.

- The engine start-stop system is not manually deactivated.

- The bonnet is fully closed.
- The driver's door is closed and the driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The vehicle battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition.
- The engine is warmed up.
- The engine coolant temperature is not too high.
- The engine exhaust temperature is not too high, e.g. after driving with high engine load.
- The ambient temperature is above -5 °C.
- The climate control system allows an Autostop.
- The brake vacuum is sufficient.
- The vehicle was driven at least at walking speed since the last Autostop.

Otherwise an Autostop will be inhibited.

The stop-start system will be disabled on inclines of 15% or more. If significant steering input is applied (1.6L with automatic transmission only) an Auto-stop may be inhibited.

Certain settings of the climate control system may inhibit an Autostop. Immediately after freeway driving, an Autostop may be inhibited.

Vehicle Battery Discharge Protection

To ensure reliable engine restarts, several battery discharge protection features are implemented as part of the engine start-stop system.

Power Saving Measures

During an Autostop, several electrical features, such as the heated rear window, are disabled or switched to a power saving mode. The fan speed of the climate control system may also be reduced to save power.

Restart of the Engine by the Driver

A restart for all engines is possible at a standstill or at a low speed up to 7 km/h.

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Late restart: Press the brake and clutch pedal, select first gear. Release the brake pedal to restart.

Conventional restart (on an incline): Press the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

Release the brake pedal or move shift lever out of **D** into **N** or **P** to restart the engine.

Restart of the Engine by the Engine Start-Stop System

On vehicles with manual transmission which are in Auto-stop, the shift lever must be in neutral to enable an automatic restart.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in **D** (Drive) to enable an automatic restart.

If one of the following conditions occurs during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the engine start-stop system:

- The engine start-stop system is manually deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened.
- The engine temperature is too low.
- The charging level of the vehicle battery is below a defined level.
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient.
- The vehicle is being driven at least at walking speed.
- The climate control system requests an engine start.
- The air conditioning is manually switched on.
- A significant steering input or indicator is applied (1.6L with automatic transmission).

If the bonnet is not fully closed, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If an electrical accessory, e.g. a portable CD player, is connected to a power outlet, a brief power drop during the restart might be noticeable.

Parking

⚠ Warning

- Always apply parking brake.

  Apply the manual parking brake without pressing release button. Apply as firmly as possible on downhill or uphill slopes.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Press the brake pedal at the same time to reduce operating force.

- Switch off the engine and ignition. Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel lock engages.
- If the vehicle is on a level surface or uphill slope, engage first gear before switching off the ignition. On an uphill slope, turn the front wheels away from the kerb.

  If the vehicle is on a downhill slope, engage reverse gear before switching off the ignition. Turn the front wheels towards the kerb.
- Lock the vehicle.

1. Apply the park brake. Check the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

2. Vehicles with automatic transmission: Move the shift lever to **P** (Park).
3. Close all windows, as desired.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.

Note

After running at high engine speed or with high engine loads, allow the engine to idle in **P** or **N** for approx. 30 seconds before turning off. This will help protect the turbocharger.

5. Press the button on the RKE transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors.

Note

The engine fan may keep running for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

⚠ Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Danger

Engine exhaust gases contain poisonous carbon monoxide, which is colourless and odourless and could be fatal if inhaled.

If exhaust gases enter the interior of the vehicle, open the windows. Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Avoid driving with an open tailgate, otherwise exhaust gases could enter the vehicle.

Catalytic Converter

The catalytic converter reduces the amount of harmful substances in the exhaust gases.

In the event of misfiring, uneven engine running, a reduction in engine performance or other unusual problems, have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer as soon as possible.

Caution
Fuel grades other than those listed in this manual could damage the catalytic converter or electronic components. Unburnt petrol will overheat and damage the catalytic converter. Therefore avoid excessive use of the starter, running the fuel tank dry and starting the engine by pushing or towing.

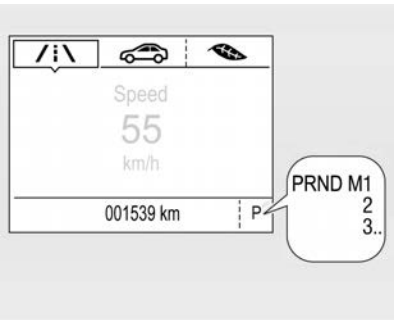
In an emergency, driving can be continued for a short period, keeping vehicle speed and engine speed low.

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission permits automatic gear shifting (automatic mode) or manual gear shifting (manual mode).

Manual shifting is possible in manual mode by tapping the shift lever to **+** or **-**.

Transmission Display



The transmission mode or selected gear is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

In automatic mode, the driving program is indicated by **D**.

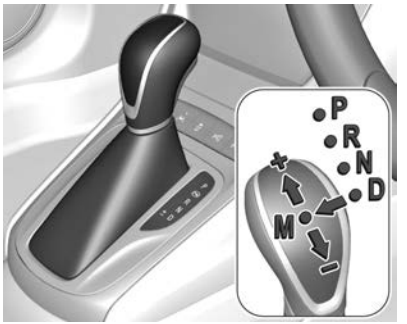
In manual mode, **M** and the number of the selected gear is indicated.

R indicates reverse gear.

N indicates neutral position.

P indicates park position.

Shift Lever



P : Park position. Wheels are locked. Engage only when the vehicle is stationary and the parking brake is applied

R : Reverse gear. Engage only when the vehicle is stationary

N : Neutral

D : Automatic mode

M : Manual mode

+ : Upshift in manual mode

− : Downshift in manual mode

Caution

Selecting position **P** while the vehicle is still moving can cause damage to the transmission.

Do not press the accelerator pedal with the brakes applied in any gear except position **P** or **N**. This will overheat the transmission.

The shift lever is locked in **P** and can only be moved when the ignition is on, the release button on the shift lever is pushed and the brake pedal is applied.

Without the brake pedal applied, illuminates. If the shift lever is not in **P** when the ignition is turned off, flashes.

To engage **P** or **R**, press the release button.

The engine can only be started with lever in position **P** or **N**. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *226*

Do not accelerate while engaging a gear. Never press the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time.

When a gear is engaged, the vehicle begins to creep when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

To prevent the vehicle from moving when position **N** is selected, always apply the park brake, press the foot brake or use suitable chocks to block the wheels.

Do not coast the vehicle in position **N** – this decreases your control and ability to accelerate quickly in an emergency.

Caution
Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Use the brakes.

Engine Braking

To utilise the engine braking effect, select a lower gear when driving downhill. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *235*.

Rocking the Vehicle

Rocking the vehicle is only permissible if the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud or snow. Move the shift lever between **D** and **R** in a repeated pattern.

Do not race the engine and avoid sudden acceleration.

Parking

Apply the parking brake and engage **P**. Ensure Ⓟ is illuminated in the instrument cluster.

The ignition key can only be removed when the shift lever is in **P**.

Manual Mode

Manual mode **M** can be activated from position **D** in any driving situation and speed.

Move the shift lever out of position **D** towards the left into position **M**.

- Tap the shift lever upwards **+** to shift to a higher gear.
- Tap the shift lever downwards **-** to shift to a lower gear.

The selected gear is indicated in the instrument cluster.

If a higher gear is selected when the vehicle speed is too low, or a lower gear when the vehicle speed is too high, the shift is not executed. This can cause a message in the Driver Information Centre.

In manual mode, no automatic shifting to a higher gear takes place at high engine revolutions.

Gear Shift Indication

The symbol ▲ or ▼ with a number beside it is indicated when gear shifting is recommended for fuel saving reasons.

Shift indication appears only in manual mode.

Electronic Driving Programs

- Following a cold start, the operating temperature program increases engine speed to quickly bring the catalytic converter to the required temperature.

- Special programs automatically adapt the shifting points when driving up inclines or down hills.
- In snowy or icy conditions or on other slippery surfaces, the electronic transmission control enables the driver to manually select first, second or third gear for starting off.

Kickdown

Pressing the accelerator pedal beyond the kick-down detent will lead to maximum acceleration independent of the selected driving mode.

The transmission shifts to a lower gear depending on engine speed.

Fault

In the event of a transmission fault, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

If a fault is detected, the electronic transmission control enables only one gear and the transmission will no longer shift automatically.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Interruption of Power Supply

In the event of an interruption to the power supply, the shift lever cannot be moved out of the **P** position. The ignition key cannot be removed from the ignition switch.

If the vehicle battery is flat, start the vehicle using jump leads. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *328*.

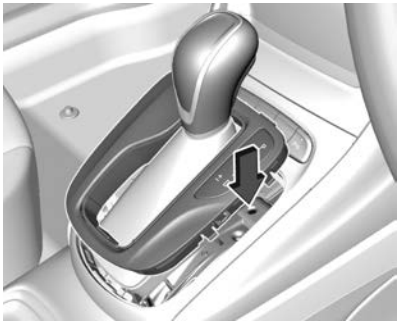
If the vehicle battery is not the cause of the fault, release the shift lever as follows.

1. Apply the parking brake.

2. Release the rear of the shift lever trim from the centre console.

   Insert a finger into the leather pocket below the shift lever and lift the trim upwards.

   Rotate the trim to the left.



3. Insert an object such as a pen or screwdriver into the opening near the shift lever.

   Push down to disengage the locking mechanism and move the shift lever out of **P**.

   If this position is engaged again, the shift lever will be locked again. Have the cause of the power supply interruption rectified by a dealer.

4. Place the shift lever trim into position on the centre console and refit.

Manual Transmission

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle has a manual transmission, never get out of the vehicle without first moving the shift lever into 1st or R (Reverse), setting the parking brake and turning the ignition off. The vehicle can roll, which could cause serious injury or death.

To engage reverse, press the clutch pedal and then press the release button on the shift lever and engage the gear.

If the gear does not engage, set the lever to neutral, release the clutch pedal and press again; then repeat gear selection.

Do not slip the clutch unnecessarily. When operating, press the clutch pedal completely. Do not use the pedal as a foot rest.

If clutch slip is detected for a specific time, the engine power will be reduced. A warning is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. Release the clutch.

Caution

It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the shift lever.

Brakes

The brake system comprises two independent brake circuits.

If a brake circuit fails, the vehicle can still be braked using the other brake circuit. However, braking effect is achieved only when the brake pedal is pressed firmly. Considerably more force is needed for this and the braking distance is extended. Seek the assistance of a dealer before continuing the journey.

When the engine is not running, the support of the brake servo unit remains only for a few brake pedal applications. Braking effect is not reduced, but braking requires significantly greater force. If a problem is detected, (!) illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking.

ABS starts to regulate brake pressure as soon as a wheel shows a tendency to lock. The vehicle remains controllable, even during hard braking.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

ABS control is made apparent through a pulse in the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process. For optimum braking, keep the brake pedal fully depressed throughout the braking process, despite the fact that the pedal is pulsating. Do not reduce the pressure on the pedal.

After starting off, the system performs a self-test which may be audible.

⚠ Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the (ABS) warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

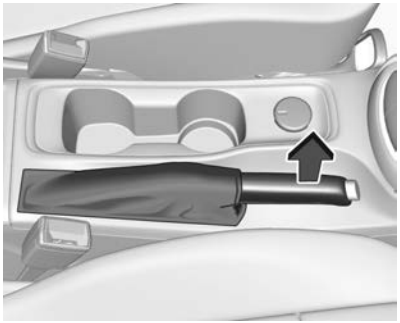
If the (ABS) warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Adaptive Brake Light

During full braking, all three brake lights flash for the duration of ABS control.

Parking Brake



Applying the parking brake:

1. Apply the parking brake firmly without engaging the release button, and apply as firmly as possible when on an uphill or downhill gradient.

Releasing the parking brake:

1. Pull the lever slightly upwards.
2. Pull the lever up slightly, press the release button on the top of the lever and lower the lever all the way down.

To reduce operating forces, press the brake pedal at the same time.

⚠ Warning

Never drive the vehicle with the parking brake applied.

Electric Parking Brake

The vehicle may have an Electric Parking Brake (EPB).

Before turning the ignition off and leaving the vehicle, always check Ⓟ is constantly illuminated in the instrument cluster.

Applying When the Vehicle is Stationary

Press the brake pedal and pull the EPB switch for a minimum of one second until Ⓟ illuminates constantly and the parking brake is applied. The parking brake operates automatically with adequate force.

The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is off. Do not operate the EPB system too often without the engine running as this will discharge the vehicle battery.

⚠ Warning

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

Releasing

Turn the ignition on. Keep the brake pedal pressed and then push the EPB switch.

Drive Away Function

Manual Transmission

Pressing the clutch pedal and then slightly releasing the clutch pedal and slightly pressing the accelerator pedal releases the electric parking brake automatically.

This is not possible when the EPB switch is pulled at the same time.

Automatic Transmission

Selecting **D** (Drive) and then pressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake automatically.

This is not possible when the EPB switch is pulled at the same time.

Dynamic Braking When the Vehicle is Moving

When the vehicle is moving and the EPB switch is kept pulled, the parking brake system will decelerate the vehicle, but will not apply statically.

As soon as the switch is released, dynamic braking will cease.

Automatic Applying

If the vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission and adaptive cruise control, when the adaptive cruise control is active the EPB is applied automatically when vehicle is stopped by the system for more than two minutes.

The parking brake releases automatically after moving off.

See *Adaptive Cruise Control* ⇨ *260*.

Functionality Check

When the vehicle is not moving, the EPB might be applied automatically. This is done to check the system.

Fault

If Ⓟ flashes, the EPB is not fully applied or released. When continuously flashing, release the EPB and retry applying.

Failure mode of the EPB is indicated by Ⓟ illuminating in the instrument cluster and by a message displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

- To apply the EPB: Pull and hold the switch for more than five seconds. If Ⓟ illuminates, the parking brake is applied.
- To release the EPB: Push and hold the switch for more than two seconds. If Ⓟ extinguishes, the parking brake is released.

Brake Assist

If the brake pedal is pressed quickly and forcefully, maximum braking force is automatically applied.

Operation of the brake assist might become apparent by a pulse in the brake pedal and a greater resistance when pressing the brake pedal.

Maintain steady pressure on the brake pedal as long as full braking is required. Maximum brake force is automatically reduced when brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

The system helps prevent unintended movement when driving away on inclines.

When releasing the brake pedal after stopping on an incline, the brakes remain on for a further two seconds. The brakes release automatically as soon as the vehicle begins to accelerate.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control System (TCS)

The Traction Control (TC) system is a component of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system.

TC improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip, by preventing the drive wheels from spinning.

As soon as the drive wheels start to spin, engine output is reduced and the wheel spinning the most is braked separately. This considerably improves the driving stability of the vehicle on slippery road surfaces.

TC is operational after each engine start, as soon as extinguishes in the instrument cluster.

When TC operates flashes for as long as control is being applied.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

Deactivation

TC can be switched off when spinning of the drive wheels is required: Press the OFF switch briefly.

illuminates in the instrument cluster and a status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when TC is deactivated.

When TC is deactivated, ESC remains active but with a higher control threshold.

TC is reactivated by pressing the OFF switch again. A status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre when TC is reactivated.

TC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system illuminates continuously and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) improves driving stability when necessary, regardless of the type of road surface or tyre grip.

As soon as the vehicle starts to swerve (understeer or oversteer), engine output is reduced and the wheels are braked individually.

ESC operates in combination with the Traction Control (TC) system. It prevents the drive wheels from spinning.

Torque distribution is a special feature that allocates the torque to the drive wheels before the ESC intervenes. When cornering, the wheels on the inner curve are braked individually. Additionally, engine torque will be delivered to the drive wheel on the outer curve. This reduces the tendency of understeer and improves traction when cornering fast.

ESC is operational after each engine start, as soon as ESC extinguishes in the instrument cluster. When ESC operates ESC flashes.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

Deactivation

ESC and TC can be deactivated:

- Press and hold the ESC OFF switch for a minimum of five seconds: TC and ESC are both deactivated.

  ESC OFF and TC illuminate in the instrument cluster and messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

- To deactivate only the traction control, press the ESC OFF switch briefly: TC is inactive but ESC remains active.

  TC illuminates in the instrument cluster and a status message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

ESC is reactivated by pressing the ESC OFF switch again. If the TC system was previously disabled, both TC and ESC are reactivated. TC and ESC OFF extinguish when TC and ESC are reactivated.

ESC is also reactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Fault

If there is a fault in the system ESC illuminates continuously and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre. The system is not operational.

Have the cause of the fault rectified by a dealer.

Sport Mode

Sport mode adapts the settings of some vehicle systems to a sportier driving style.

Activation

Press **SPORT** when engine is running. A LED in the button illuminates when sport mode is active and a status message appears in the Driver Information Centre.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

Deactivation

Briefly press **SPORT**. Sport mode is also deactivated the next time the ignition is switched on.

Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, reversing, and parking. Please read this entire section to gain a full understanding of their capabilities and limitations before using these systems.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.
- Work if the detection sensor is covered, such as with a sticker, magnet, etc.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The rear vision camera assists the driver when reversing by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle on the infotainment system display.

⚠ Warning

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

There is a blind spot that cannot be sensed by the camera.

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera (rear number plate surround), it may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

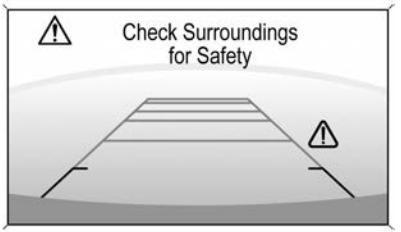
Activation

The rear vision camera is automatically activated when reverse gear is engaged.

Functionality

Hatchback: The camera is mounted between the rear number plate lights.

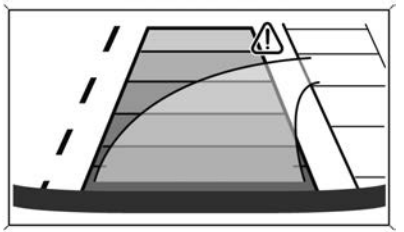
Sportwagon: The camera is mounted under the tailgate moulding.



The area displayed by the camera is limited. The distance of the image that appears on the display differs from the actual distance.

Guide Lines

Dynamic guide lines are horizontal lines at one metre intervals projected onto the display to define the distance to displayed objects.



The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

Warning Symbols

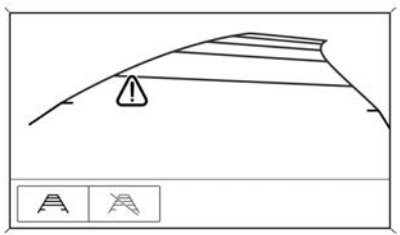
Warning symbols ⚠ are indicated on the display which show obstacles detected by the rear parking assist sensors.

Additionally ⚠ appears on the top line of the display with the warning to check the area surrounding the vehicle.

Deactivation

The camera is switched off when a certain forward speed is exceeded or if reverse gear is not engaged for approx. 15 seconds. The infotainment system display returns to the previous screen.

Deactivation of Guide Lines and Warning Symbols



Activation or deactivation of the visual guide lines and the warning symbols can be changed in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Settings* ⇨ *151* or *208*.

System Limitations

The rear vision camera may not operate properly when:

- The surrounding is dark.
- The sun or headlight beams is/ are shining directly into the camera lens.
- When driving at night.
- The weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The camera lens is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt. Clean the lens, rinse with water, and wipe with a soft cloth.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- The vehicle has had a rear end collision.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Fault messages are displayed with ⚠ on the top line of the infotainment system display.

Parking Assist

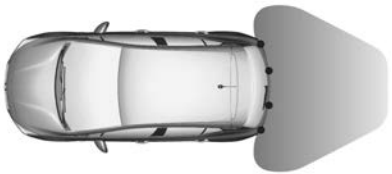
Rear Parking Assist

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when reversing or driving forward while using parking assist system.

The rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indications.



The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

Activation

The system is activated automatically once the ignition is turned on.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates the system is ready to operate.

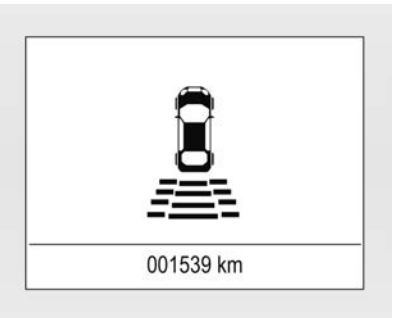
Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle within a distance of up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to the obstacle, the acoustic warning signals sound in the vehicle on that side.

The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle moves closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message, distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P. The LED in the button extinguishes.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, the LED in the button flashes for three seconds and then extinguishes. A message is displayed in the DIC.

Front-rear Parking Assist

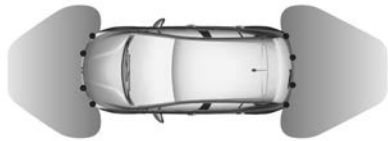
⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area when reversing or driving forward while using parking assist system.

The front-rear parking assist measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front of and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals and display indications.

Two different acoustic warning signals are sounded for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.



The system has four ultrasonic parking sensors each in the rear and front bumper.

Activation

When reverse gear is selected, the front and rear parking assist is ready to operate. The front parking assist is also activated automatically at a speed up to 11 km/h.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates the system is ready to operate. If P is switched off within an ignition cycle, the front parking assist is deactivated. If vehicle speed has exceeded 25 km/h beforehand, parking assist will be reactivated when speed drops below 11 km/h.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

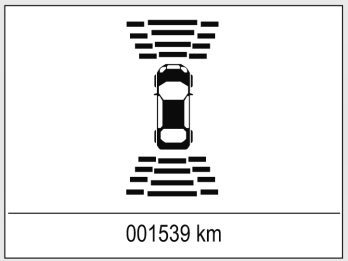
Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals against potentially hazardous obstacles in front of the vehicle within a distance of up to 80 cm and behind the vehicle within a distance of up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, or up to 1.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

Depending on which side of the vehicle is closer to the obstacle, the acoustic warning signals sound in the vehicle on that side.

The interval between the sounds becomes shorter as the vehicle moves closer to that obstacle. When the distance is less than approx. 30 cm, the sound is continuous.

Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the DIC.



The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message, distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

The rear parking assist automatically switches off when reverse gear is disengaged. The front parking assist is deactivated automatically when vehicle speed exceeds 11 km/h. Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P.

When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and a message is displayed in the DIC.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if P is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

The complete system can be manually deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu in the infotainment system. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until reactivated.

See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message is displayed in the DIC.

Notes on the Parking Assist Systems

⚠ Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing, as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the vehicle.

Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity, e.g. off-road vehicles or trucks, etc. Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

A sensor may detect a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments; sporadic false warnings may occur.

For vehicles with front parking assist, make sure the front number plate is correctly mounted, not bent and there are no gaps to the bumper fascia on either side.

Also ensure the front and rear bumper fascias are not damaged.

Towing

When attaching a trailer or bike carrier, etc., with an electrical connection, the parking assist may be deactivated.

A message may be displayed advising this once the vehicle speed has exceeded 75 km/h and then returned to below 11 km/h.

Adjustment of the detection area may be available if a towbar is fitted. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Advanced Parking Assist

The advanced parking assist system measures a suitable parking spot while passing, calculates the trajectory and automatically steers the vehicle into a parallel or perpendicular parking spot. Instructions are given in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). Instructions are supported by acoustic signals. The driver must control acceleration and gear shifting, while steering is done automatically.

⚠ Warning

The driver bears full responsibility for accepting the parking spot suggested by the system and the parking manoeuvre.

Always check the surrounding area in all directions when using the advanced parking assist.

Advanced parking assist is combined with the front-rear parking assist. Both systems use the same sensors in the front and rear bumpers, however vehicles with advanced parking assist have six ultrasonic parking sensors in each bumper.

Activation

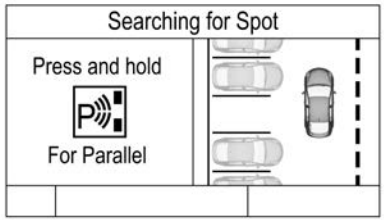
Advanced parking assist can only be activated when driving forwards.

When searching for a parking spot, the system is ready to operate with a short press of P. The system detects ten metres for parallel parking spots or six metres for perpendicular parking spots when in advanced parking assist mode.

The system can only be activated at a speed up to 30 km/h and the system searches for a parking spot at a speed up to 30 km/h.

The maximum allowed parallel distance between the vehicle and a row of parked cars is 1.8 metres for parallel parking and 2.5 metres for perpendicular parking.

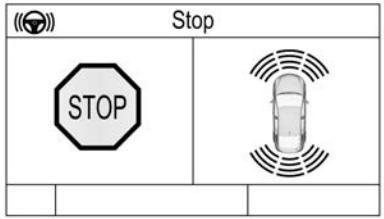
Parking Spot Search Mode



When activated, the system will search for a perpendicular parking spot by default. To search for a parallel spot, press and hold P.

The system is configured to detect parking spots by default on the passenger side.

To detect parking spots on the driver's side, operate the turn signal lever to the driver's side.



When a spot is detected, a visual feedback in the DIC and an acoustic signal is given.

Park Guiding Mode

The parking spot suggestion of the system is accepted when the vehicle is stopped by the driver within ten metres for parallel parking spots or six metres for perpendicular parking spots, after the STOP message is given.

The system calculates the optimal path into the parking spot.

A brief vibration in the steering wheel after engaging reverse gear indicates the steering is controlled by the system.

The vehicle is steered into the spot automatically by providing the driver detailed instructions for braking, accelerating and shifting forward or reversing. The driver must keep hands away from the steering wheel.

Always pay attention to the sound of the front-rear parking assist.
A continuous sound indicates the distance to an obstacle is less than approx. 30 cm.

If, for any reason, the driver must take over control of the steering, hold the steering wheel only at the outer edge. Automatic steering is cancelled in this event.

Display Indication

The instructions on the display show:

- General hints and warning messages.
- Advice to reduce speed if driving faster than 30 km/h during parking spot searching mode.
- The command to stop the vehicle when a parking spot is detected.
- The direction of driving during the parking manoeuvre.
- The commands to shift into **R** or **D**.
- The command to brake or accelerate.
- For some instructions a progress bar is shown in the DIC.
- The successful completion of the parking manoeuvre indicated by a message symbol and a chime.
- The cancelling of a parking manoeuvre.

Display Priorities

Advanced parking assist indication in the Driver Information Centre can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority.

After approving the message by pressing ✓ on the steering wheel, advanced parking assist instructions appear again and the parking manoeuvre can be continued.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by:

- A short press of P.
- Parking manoeuvre successfully ended.
- Driving faster than 30 km/h during a parking spot search.
- Driving faster than 8 km/h during a parking guidance.
- Driver interference on the steering wheel detected.
- Exceeding the maximum number of gear changes: eight cycles when parallel parking or five cycles when perpendicular parking.
- Turning the ignition off.

Deactivation by the driver or by the system during manoeuvring will be indicated by a message being displayed. Additionally, an acoustic signal sounds.

Fault

A message is displayed when:

- There is a fault in the system.
- The driver did not successfully complete the parking manoeuvre.
- The system is not operational.
- Any of the deactivation reasons described above apply.

If an object is detected during parking instructions, STOP is indicated on the display. Removing the object will resume the parking manoeuvre. If the object is not removed, the system will be deactivated. A long press of P will activate the system and search for a new parking spot.

Notes on the Advanced Parking Assist System

⚠ Warning

Under certain circumstances, various reflective surfaces on objects or clothing, as well as external noise sources may cause the system to fail to detect obstacles.

Special attention must be paid to low obstacles which can damage the lower part of the vehicle.

Caution

Performance of the system can be reduced when sensors are covered, e.g. by ice or snow.

Performance of the parking assist system can be reduced due to heavy loading of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Special conditions apply if there are taller vehicles in the vicinity, e.g. off-road vehicles or trucks, etc. Object identification and correct distance indication in the upper part of these vehicles cannot be guaranteed.

Objects with a very small reflection cross-section, e.g. objects of narrow size or soft materials, may not be detected by the system.

Parking assist systems do not detect objects outside the detection range.

A sensor may detect a non-existing object caused by echo disturbance from external acoustic noise or mechanical misalignments; sporadic false warnings may occur.

Make sure the front number plate is correctly mounted, not bent and there are no gaps to the bumper

fascia on either side. Also ensure the front and rear bumper fascias are not damaged.

The advanced parking assist system may not respond to changes in the available parking space after initiating a parking manoeuvre.

The system may recognise an entry, a gateway, a courtyard or even a crossing as a parking spot.

After selecting reverse gear the system will start a parking manoeuvre. Take care regarding the availability of the suggested parking spot.

Low curbs and surface irregularities are not detected by the system. The driver accepts responsibility.

Note

New vehicles require a calibration during first use. For optimal parking guidance, a driving distance of at least 10 km, including a number of bends, is required.

The system is calibrated for factory-fitted wheels. Parking performance is altered with other tyre or wheel sizes.

Cruise Control

The cruise control system can store and maintain speeds from approx. 30 km/h to the maximum vehicle speed.

Deviations from the stored speeds may occur when driving uphill or downhill. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits. Activating in first gear is not possible.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds.
A constant speed is not practical in heavy or varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Remember that when illuminates green, the cruise control is maintaining the vehicle's speed. Taking your foot off the accelerator pedal does not reduce the speed. To deactivate the cruise control, press the brake pedal or push .

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. The vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills (particularly when towing), the vehicle may lose speed. In this case, use the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal when the speed returns to the set speed.

The cruise control is cancelled if Traction Control (TC) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

becomes active, indicated by flashing on the instrument panel display.

Switching On

The cruise control switches are located on the steering wheel and vary depending on vehicle model. Operation is the same.

Press on the steering wheel. illuminates white in the instrument cluster.

Activation

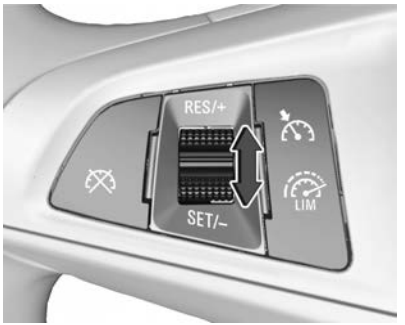
Accelerate to the desired speed above 30 km/h and turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained. illuminates green in the instrument cluster. On some models the set speed is also indicated.

The accelerator pedal can be released.

Vehicle speed can be temporarily increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the previously stored speed is resumed.

Cruise control remains activated while shifting gears.

Increase Speed



With cruise control active, hold the steering wheel thumb wheel turned to **RES/+** or briefly turn to **RES/+** repeatedly. Vehicle speed increases continuously or in small increments.

Alternatively, accelerate to the desired speed and store by turning to **SET/-**.

Reduce Speed

With cruise control active, hold the steering wheel thumb wheel turned to **SET/-** or briefly turn to **SET/-** repeatedly. Vehicle speed decreases continuously or in small increments.

Deactivation

Press on the steering wheel. illuminates white in the instrument cluster.

The cruise control is deactivated, but not switched off. The last stored speed remains in memory.

Automatic Deactivation

The cruise control may automatically deactivate when:

- Vehicle speed is below approx. 30 km/h.
- Vehicle speed drops more than 25 km/h below the set speed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The clutch pedal is pressed for more than a few seconds.
- The shift lever is in N.
- Engine speed is in a very low range.
- The Traction Control (TC) system or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is operating.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Simultaneously pressing **RES/+** and the brake pedal deactivates the cruise control and will delete the stored speed.

Resume Stored Speed

If the cruise control system has not been turned off since it was last set, turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 30 km/h. The stored speed will be returned.

Switching Off

Press on the steering wheel. extinguishes in the instrument cluster. The stored speed is deleted. Pressing LIM on the steering wheel to activate the speed limiter, or turning the ignition off also switches the cruise control off and deletes the stored speed.

Speed Limiter

The speed limiter prevents the vehicle exceeding a preset maximum speed.

Maximum speed can be set at speeds above 25 km/h. The driver can only accelerate up to the preset speed. Deviations from the limited speed may occur when driving downhill.

The preset speed limit is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) when the system is active.

Activation

The speed limiter switches are located on the steering wheel and vary depending on vehicle model. Operation is the same.

Press LIM on the steering wheel. LIM illuminates in the DIC.

If cruise control has been activated previously, it is switched off when the speed limiter is activated and extinguishes.

Set Limited Speed

Accelerate to the desired speed and briefly turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored as the vehicle maximum speed. Depending on vehicle model, LIM and the speed limit is displayed, or LIM changes to green.

Change Limited Speed

With the speed limiter active, hold or briefly turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **RES/+** to increase, or **SET/-** to decrease the desired maximum speed.

Exceeding Limited Speed

When exceeding the limited speed without driver input, the speed will flash in the DIC and a chime sounds during this period.

In the event of an emergency, it is possible to exceed the speed limit by pressing the accelerator pedal firmly to near fully pressed. In this case no chime appears.

Release the accelerator pedal and the speed limiter function is reactivated once a speed lower than the limit speed is obtained.

Deactivation

Press on the steering wheel. The speed limiter is deactivated and the vehicle can be driven without speed limit.

Depending on vehicle model the stored limited speed is indicated in brackets or LIM changes to white.

Additionally, a corresponding message is displayed. The speed limiter is deactivated, but not switched off and the last stored speed remains in memory.

Resume Limited Speed

Turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **RES/+**.

The stored speed limit will be obtained and is indicated without brackets in the DIC.

Switching Off

Press LIM on the steering wheel. The speed limit indication extinguishes in the DIC and the stored speed is deleted.

By pressing on the steering wheel to activate cruise control or adaptive cruise control, the speed limiter is also deactivated and the stored speed is deleted.

Turning the ignition off also deactivates the speed limiter, but the speed limit will be stored for next speed limiter activation.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive cruise control is an enhancement to conventional cruise control with the additional feature of maintaining a certain distance behind the vehicle ahead.

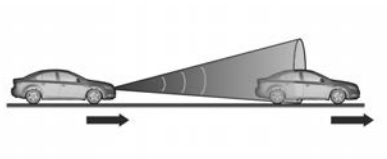
Adaptive cruise control automatically decelerates the vehicle when approaching a slower moving vehicle. It then adjusts the vehicle speed to follow the vehicle ahead at the selected following distance.

The vehicle speed increases or decreases to follow the vehicle in front, but will not exceed the set speed. It may apply limited braking with activated brake lights.

The adaptive cruise control can store and maintain speeds over approx. 25 km/h. If following a vehicle ahead driving slower than 25 km/h, the slower speed will be set.

If equipped, on vehicles with full range adaptive cruise control the system can also brake to a stop.

It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits.



Adaptive cruise control uses radar and camera sensors to detect the vehicles ahead. If no vehicle is detected in the driving path, the adaptive cruise control will behave like a conventional cruise control.

For safety reasons, the system cannot be activated before the brake pedal or clutch pedal has been pressed once since the ignition was turned on.

Adaptive cruise control is designed to be used on long straight roads such as highways or country roads with steady traffic. Do not use the system if it is not advisable to maintain a constant speed.

⚠ Warning

Complete driver attention is always required while driving with adaptive cruise control.

The driver remains fully in control of the vehicle because the brake pedal, the accelerator pedal and the cancel switch have priority over any adaptive cruise control operation.

Switching On

Press on the steering wheel to switch on adaptive cruise control. is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Activation by Setting the Speed

Adaptive cruise control can be activated at speeds above 25 km/h. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with local posted speed limits.

Accelerate to the desired speed and turn the steering wheel thumb wheel to **SET/-**. The current speed is stored and maintained.

The adaptive cruise control symbol, the following distance setting and the set speed are indicated in the DIC. The accelerator pedal can be released.

Adaptive cruise control remains activated during gear shifting.

Overriding Set Speed

It is always possible to drive faster than the selected set speed by pressing the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is released, the vehicle returns to the desired distance if a slower vehicle is ahead. Otherwise it returns to the stored speed.

Once the system is activated, adaptive cruise control decelerates or brakes if it detects a vehicle ahead which is slower or closer than the desired following distance.

⚠ Warning

The system temporarily deactivates automatic braking when the set speed is overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal. This is indicated as a warning in the Driver Information Centre or by turning blue.

Increase Speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **RES/+** to increase speed continuously. Push **RES/+** repeatedly to increase speed in small increments.

If the vehicle is driven with adaptive cruise control in active mode much faster than the desired speed, e.g. after pressing the accelerator pedal, then the current speed can be stored and maintained by turning the thumb wheel to **SET/-**.

Reduce Speed

With adaptive cruise control active, hold **SET/-** to decrease speed continuously. Push **SET/-** repeatedly to decrease speed in small increments.

If the vehicle is driven with adaptive cruise control in active mode much slower than the desired speed, e.g. because of a slower vehicle ahead, then the current speed can be stored and maintained by turning the thumb wheel to **SET/-**.

Resume Stored Speed

If the system is switched on but inactive and a speed was stored before, turn the thumb wheel on the steering wheel to **RES/+** at a speed above 25 km/h to resume the stored speed.

Full Speed Range Adaptive Cruise Control

If equipped, full speed range adaptive cruise control will maintain a following-gap behind a detected vehicle and slow your vehicle to a stop behind that vehicle.

In case of a brief stop of the vehicle ahead, the adaptive cruise control will resume automatically without driver action. If necessary on some versions, press **RES/+** or the accelerator pedal to resume adaptive cruise control.

If the stopped vehicle ahead was stopped for a longer time and then begins to move forward, the green illuminated vehicle ahead control indicator will flash and a warning chime will sound as a reminder to check traffic before proceeding.

When the vehicle ahead drives away, press **RES+** or the accelerator pedal to resume adaptive cruise control. If stopped for more than two minutes or if the driver's door is opened and the

driver's seat belt is unbuckled, the electric parking brake is applied automatically to hold the vehicle. Ⓟ will illuminate. To release electric parking brake press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated or cancelled, the vehicle will no longer be held at a stop and can start moving. Always be prepared to manually apply the brake pedal to hold the vehicle stationary.

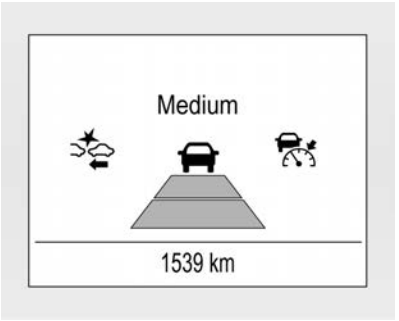
Do not leave the vehicle while it is being held at a stop by the adaptive cruise control. Always move the shift lever to P (Park) and turn the ignition off before leaving the vehicle.

Setting the Following Distance

When adaptive cruise control detects a slower moving vehicle in the driving path, it will adjust the vehicle speed to maintain the following distance selected by the driver.

The following distance can be set to near, medium or far.

Press ⇄ on the steering wheel. The current setting is shown in the DIC. Press ⇄ again repeatedly to change the following distance. The setting is also displayed in the DIC.



The selected following distance is indicated by filled distance bars in the adaptive cruise control page.

Note

The following distance setting is shared with the sensitivity setting of Forward Collision Alert. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *268*.

Example: If the far setting is selected, then the driver is warned sooner before a possible collision.

⚠ Warning

The Driver accepts full responsibility to drive with the appropriate following distance based on traffic, weather, visibility and traffic regulations.

The following distance must be adjusted or the system switched off if required by the prevailing conditions.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead

The green illuminated vehicle ahead indicator is displayed when the system detects a vehicle in the driving path at a distance of up to 150 metres.

If this symbol does not display, or displays briefly, the adaptive cruise control will not respond to vehicles ahead.

Deactivation

Adaptive cruise control is deactivated by the driver when:

- on the steering wheel is pressed.
- The brake pedal is applied.
- The clutch pedal is pressed for more than four seconds.
- The shift lever is moved to **N** (Neutral).

The system is also automatically deactivated when:

- Vehicle speed is above 190 km/h or slows to below 15 km/h. On vehicles with automatic transmission it slows to a stop without deactivating within two minutes.
- The Traction Control (TC) system is deactivated or the system is operating.
- The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is deactivated or the system is operating.
- There is no traffic and nothing detected on the road sides for approx. one minute. In this case there are no radar echoes and the sensor may report that it is blocked.
- The active emergency braking system is applying the brakes.
- Driving on steep inclines.
- The radar sensor is blocked by an ice or water film.
- A fault is detected in the radar, camera, engine or brake system.

Additionally, the system is automatically deactivated on vehicles with full speed range adaptive cruise control:

- The electric parking brake is applied.
- The vehicle is being held to a stop by the system for more than two minutes.
- The vehicle stops, the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the driver's door is opened.

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, changes from green to white and a message is displayed in the DIC. The stored speed is maintained.

changes from green to white when the system is deactivated but not switched off.

⚠ Warning

When adaptive cruise control is deactivated, the driver must take over full braking and engine control immediately.

Switching Off

Press on the steering wheel to switch off the adaptive cruise control. extinguishes in the DIC and the stored speed is deleted.

Turning the ignition off also switches off the adaptive cruise control and deletes the stored speed.

Driver's Attention

- Use adaptive cruise control carefully on bends or mountain roads, as it can lose the vehicle ahead and needs time to detect it again.
- Do not use the system on slippery roads as it can create rapid changes in tyre traction (wheel spinning), resulting in loss of control of the vehicle.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control during rain, snow or on dirt roads, as the radar sensor can be covered by a water film, dust, ice or snow. This reduces or suppresses completely the visibility. In case of sensor blockage, clean the sensor cover.

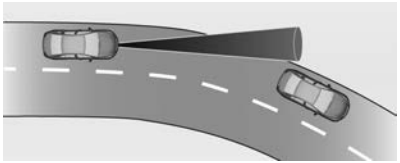
System Limitations

⚠ Warning

The system's automatic brake force does not permit hard braking. Therefore the braking level may not be sufficient to avoid a collision.

- After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle. If a new vehicle is detected, the system may accelerate instead of braking.
- Adaptive cruise control does ignore the oncoming traffic.
- Adaptive cruise control does not brake for pedestrians, animals, very slow speed driving or stopped vehicles.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control when towing a trailer.
- Do not use adaptive cruise control on steep inclines.

Bends



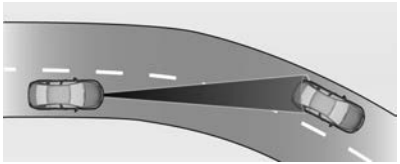
The adaptive cruise control calculates a predicted path based on centrifugal force. This predicted path considers the current bend characteristic, but cannot consider a future bend change.

The system may lose the current vehicle ahead or consider a vehicle which is not in the actual lane. This can happen when entering or exiting a bend or if the bend gets tighter or wider.

If a vehicle ahead is no longer detected will extinguish.

If the centrifugal force is too high in a bend, the system slows the vehicle slightly. This braking level is not designed to avoid spinning off the bend.

The driver is responsible for reducing the selected speed before entering a bend and in general to adapt the speed to the road type and to existing speed limits.



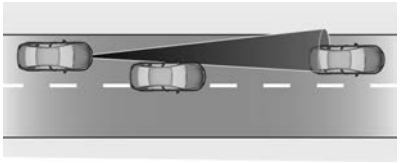
Freeways

On freeways, adapt the set speed to the situation and the weather. Always consider that adaptive cruise control has a limited visibility range, a limited braking level and a certain reaction time to verify if a vehicle is on the driving path or not.

Adaptive cruise control may not be able to brake the vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a much slower vehicle or after a lane change. This is particularly true while driving fast or if the visibility is reduced due to weather conditions.

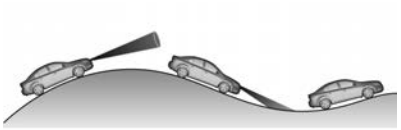
While entering or exiting a freeway, adaptive cruise control may lose the vehicle ahead and accelerate up to the set speed. For this reason, decrease the set speed before the exit or before the entry.

Vehicle Path Change



If another vehicle enters your driving path, adaptive cruise control will first consider the vehicle when it is completely in your path. Be ready to take action and press the brake pedal, if you need to brake more quickly.

Hill Considerations



⚠ Warning

Do not use adaptive cruise control on roads with steep hills.

System performance on hills depends on vehicle speed, vehicle load, traffic conditions and the road gradient. It may not detect a vehicle in your path while driving on hills.

On steep hills, you may have to use the accelerator pedal to maintain your vehicle speed. When going downhill you may have to brake to maintain or reduce your speed.

Note

Applying the brakes deactivates the system.

Radar Unit

The radar unit is mounted behind the radiator grille below the brand emblem.

⚠ Warning

The radar unit was aligned carefully during vehicle manufacture. Therefore, in the event of a front-end impact the alignment may be compromised. Do not use the system.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The front bumper may appear to be intact, however the radar unit behind can be out of position and react incorrectly. After an accident, consult a dealer to verify and adjust the radar unit position.

Settings

Adaptive cruise control settings can be changed in the vehicle personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Fault

If the adaptive cruise control does not operate due to temporary conditions, e.g. blockage by ice, overheated brakes or low speed manoeuvres, etc., or if there is a permanent system error, a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

Forward collision alert may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end collisions.

If the vehicle is equipped with conventional cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the front camera in the windscreen to detect a vehicle in your path directly ahead. If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control, the forward collision alert uses the radar sensor and front camera to detect a vehicle in your path directly ahead.

A detected vehicle ahead is indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator . If a vehicle directly ahead is approached too quickly, a warning chime and alert in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) is provided. Additionally the driver is notified by a flashing red LED stripe projected on to the windscreen in the driver's field of view.

A precondition is that forward collision alert is not deactivated.

Activation

- Forward collision alert with the front camera detects vehicles up to distances of approx. 60 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.
- Forward collision alert with the radar sensor detects vehicles up to distances of approx. 150 metres and operates automatically at all speeds above walking speed.

Alerting the Driver

 illuminates green in the instrument cluster when the system has detected a vehicle in the driving path.

 changes to yellow when the distance to a preceding moving vehicle becomes small or if approaching another vehicle too rapidly.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system only and does not apply the brakes.

When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all.

The FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.

The driver bears full responsibility for maintaining safe following distance according to applicable traffic rules, weather and road conditions, etc. at all times.

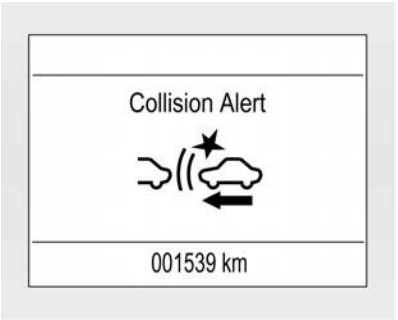
When the time to a potential collision with a preceding vehicle becomes too small and a collision is imminent, a collision alert symbol is displayed in the DIC.

The driver is also notified by a flashing red LED stripe projected on to the windscreen in the driver's field of view. Simultaneously a warning chime sounds.

Press the brake pedal and steer the vehicle as required by the situation.

Selecting Alert Sensitivity

Press ⇄ on the steering wheel to set the alert sensitivity to near, medium or far and on some models, off.



The first button press displays the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed.

The alert timing will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the further away the alert will occur. Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing.

Note

The alert timing sensitivity setting is shared with the following distance setting of the adaptive cruise

control, if equipped. Changing the alert timing sensitivity changes the adaptive cruise control following distance setting.

Deactivation

The system can be deactivated.

For vehicles with forward collision alert with a radar sensor, the system can be deactivated in the Settings menu in the infotainment system. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

For vehicles with forward collision alert with a front camera, press on the steering wheel repeatedly until Forward Collision Alert Off is displayed in the DIC.

If the forward collision alert was deactivated, alert sensitivity is set to Medium when the ignition is next turned on. The last selected setting will be stored when the ignition is switched off.

System Limitations

Forward collision alert is designed to provide a warning for vehicles only, but may react also to other objects.

In the following cases, forward collision alert may not detect a vehicle ahead or sensor performance may be limited:

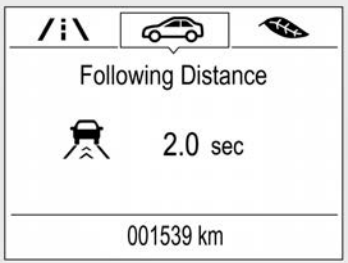
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Where the weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The windscreen sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or is affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

Following Distance Indication System

The following distance indication displays the distance to a preceding moving vehicle.

The front camera in the windscreen is used to detect the distance of a vehicle directly ahead in the vehicle's path. It is active at speeds above 40 km/h.

When a preceding vehicle is detected ahead, the distance is indicated in seconds and displayed on a page in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).



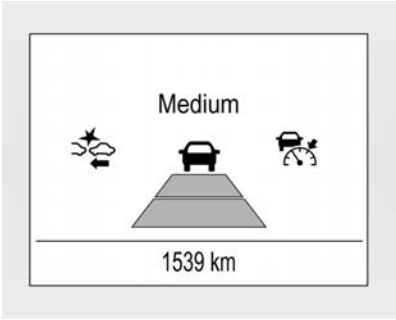
- For Type 1 displays: Select the Vehicle Information menu using the MENU button on the turn signal lever. Turn the adjuster wheel to choose Following Distance page.

- For Type 2 displays: Select the Info menu using the steering wheel buttons and press ▽ to scroll down to the Following Distance page.

For further information on using the DIC menus see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *101*.

The minimum indicated distance is 0.5 seconds.

If there is no vehicle ahead or the vehicle ahead is out of range, two dashes will be displayed: -.- sec.



If the vehicle is equipped with adaptive cruise control and it is active, this page shows the alert sensitivity setting instead of following distance setting.

System Limitations

In the following cases, following distance indication sensor performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) can help reduce damage and injury from collisions with vehicles and obstacles detected directly ahead, when a collision can no longer be avoided either by manual braking or by steering.

Before AEB applies, the driver is warned by the forward collision alert system. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *268*.

AEB uses various inputs, such as a camera sensor, radar sensor, brake pressure and vehicle speed, to calculate the probability of a frontal collision.

⚠ Warning

This system is not intended to replace the driver's responsibility for driving the vehicle and looking ahead. Its function is limited to supplemental use only to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision.

The system may not react to pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

Functionality

If equipped only with the front camera, AEB operates in a forward gear above walking speed up to approx. 80 km/h.

For vehicles with a radar sensor, AEB operates in a forward gear above walking speed at all speeds.

A precondition is that forward collision alert with the front camera system is not deactivated.

The system includes:

- Brake preparation system.
- Emergency automatic braking.
- Forward looking brake assist.
- Intelligent brake assist (only with radar sensor).

Brake Preparation System

When approaching a vehicle ahead so quickly that a collision is likely, the brake preparation system slightly pressurises the brakes. This reduces the response time, when manual or automatic braking is requested.

The brake system is prepared so that braking can occur rapidly.
If equipped only with front camera the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h.

Emergency Automatic Braking

After activation of brake preparation system and just before the imminent collision, this function automatically applies limited braking to reduce the impact speed of the collision, or prohibit a crash.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard.

This front automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle ahead is detected, indicated by the vehicle ahead indicator .

If equipped only with front camera, the system operates up to a speed of approx. 60 km/h. Below a speed of 40 km/h the system can apply full braking.

Emergency automatic braking may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to attempt to avoid a potential collision. If this happens, emergency automatic braking may engage the electric parking brake to hold the vehicle at a stop. To release, press the electric parking brake button or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

Emergency automatic braking is an emergency collision preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on the system to brake the vehicle.

Emergency automatic braking will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

Forward Looking Brake Assist

In addition to the brake preparation system and emergency automatic braking, the forward looking brake assist function increases brake sensitivity. Therefore, less brake pedal pressure is required to achieve immediate hard braking.

This function helps the driver brake faster and harder before the imminent collision.

If equipped with only a front camera, the system operates up to a speed of approx. 80 km/h.

⚠ Warning

Autonomous emergency braking is not designed to apply hard autonomous braking or to automatically avoid a collision. It is designed to reduce the vehicle speed before a collision. It may not react to pedestrians or animals. After a sudden lane

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

change, the system needs a certain time to detect the next preceding vehicle.

The complete attention of the driver is always required while driving. The driver must always be ready to take action and apply the brakes and steer to avoid collisions.

The system is designed to work with all occupants wearing their seat belts.

Intelligent Brake Assist

If the vehicle is equipped with a radar sensor, intelligent brake assist may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time are normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. Intelligent brake assist will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

Intelligent brake assist may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

Deactivation

For vehicles with a front camera, AEB can be deactivated by repeatedly pressing on the steering wheel to the Off setting. If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

For vehicles with a radar sensor, AEB can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*. If deactivated a message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

System Limitations

In some cases, the AEB system may provide automatic braking in situations that seem to be unnecessary, such as in parking garages, due to traffic signs in a curve or due to vehicles in another lane. This is normal operation; the vehicle does not need service.

Firmly apply the accelerator pedal to override the automatic braking if the situation and the surroundings permit.

In the following cases, AEB performance is limited:

- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- Detecting all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detecting a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.

To avoid malfunction, always keep the areas of the camera sensor in the windscreen and the radar sensor behind the radiator grille clean from dirt, dust, ice and snow.

⚠ Warning

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Fault

Messages are displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) if the system does not work as it should, or if a fault is detected. See a dealer for assistance.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

The Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) system detects objects on either side of the vehicle, within a specified blind spot zone. A visual alert is displayed in each exterior mirror when objects are detected that may not be visible in the interior and exterior mirrors.

SBZA uses some of the advanced parking assist sensors located in each side of the front and rear bumpers.

⚠ Warning

Side blind zone alert does not replace driver vision. The system does not detect:

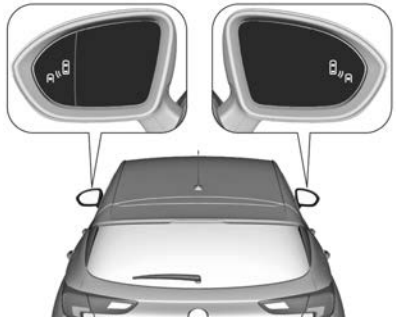
- Vehicles outside the side blind zones which may be rapidly approaching.
- Pedestrians, cyclists or animals.

Before changing a lane, always check all mirrors, look over your shoulder and use the turn signal.

When the system detects a vehicle in the side blind zone while driving forward, either while passing a vehicle or being passed, the yellow warning symbol will illuminate in the relevant exterior mirror. If the driver then activates a turn signal, starts flashing yellow as a warning not to change lanes.

Note

If the overtaking vehicle is travelling at least 10 km/h faster than the vehicle being overtaken, in the relevant exterior mirror may not illuminate.



SBZA is active from speeds of 10 km/h up to 140 km/h. Driving faster than 140 km/h deactivates the system, indicated by lighting warning symbols in both exterior mirrors. Reducing the speed again will extinguish the warning symbols. If a vehicle is then detected in the blind zone, the warning symbols will illuminate as normal on the relevant side.

When the engine is started, both exterior mirror displays will briefly illuminate to indicate the system is operating.

Detection Zones

The detection zones commence at the rear bumper and extend approx. three metres rearward and to the sides. The height of the zone is between approx. half a metre and two metres from the ground.

Side blind zone alert is designed to ignore stationary objects such as guardrails, posts, curbs, walls and beams. Parked vehicles or oncoming vehicles are not detected.

Deactivation

The side blind zone alert can be deactivated. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *108*.

Deactivation is indicated by a message in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

System Limitations

Occasional missed alerts can occur under normal circumstances and will increase in wet conditions. The system may not operate properly when:

- Ice, snow, mud, stickers, magnets, metal plates, or anything else covers the sensors.
- Driving in heavy rainstorms.
- The area surrounding the detection sensor has been damaged or is not repaired correctly.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

In the event of a fault in the system or if the system does not work due to temporary conditions, the symbols in the mirrors will be permanently illuminated and a message is displayed in the DIC. Seek the assistance of a dealer.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) helps to avoid collisions due to unintentional lane departures.

The front camera observes the lane markings between which the vehicle is driving.

If the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the steering wheel is gently turned to position the vehicle back into the lane. Turn the steering wheel in same direction if system steering is not sufficient. Turn the steering wheel gently into opposite direction if lane change is intended.

When crossing a lane marking significantly, lane keep assist displays a visual warning and an acoustic warning sounds.

Unintended lane departure is assumed:

- without using turn signal,
- using the turn signal in the opposite direction of the lane departure,
- without braking,
- without acceleration, or
- without active steering.

Note

- The system may be switched off during detection of ambiguous lane markings, e.g. in construction areas.
- The system may be switched off if it detects lanes which are too narrow, too wide or too curved.

Activation

LKA is activated by pressing . The LED in the button illuminates to indicate the system is switched on.

When in the instrument cluster illuminates green, the system is ready to assist. The system is operational at vehicle speeds above 60 km/h and if lane markings are available.

The system gently turns the steering wheel and changes to yellow if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

The system alerts by flashing together with three chimes from that direction, if the lane is departed significantly.

The system is only operable when a lane marking is detected. If the system only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist for this side.

LKA detects hands-free driving. In this case a message in the Driver Information Centre is displayed and a chime sounds as long as lane keep assist detects hands-free driving.

⚠ Warning

Always keep your attention on the road and maintain correct vehicle position within the lane, otherwise vehicle damage, injury or death could occur.

Lane keep assist does not continuously steer the vehicle. The system may not keep the vehicle in the lane or give an alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The steering of the lane keep assist may not be sufficient to avoid a lane departure.

The system may not detect hands-off driving due to external influences (road condition and surface, weather, etc.). The driver has full responsibility to control the vehicle and is always required to keep the hands on the steering wheel while driving.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Using the system while driving on slippery roads could cause loss of control of the vehicle. Switch the system off.

Deactivation

The system is deactivated by pressing . The LED in the button extinguishes.

System Limitations

The system may not operate properly when:

- Vehicle speed is out of range, e.g. below 60 km/h.
- Driving on winding or hilly roads.
- When driving at night.
- Weather limits visibility, such as fog, rain, or snow.
- The sensor in the windscreen is blocked by snow, ice, slush, mud, dirt, windscreen damage or affected by foreign objects, e.g. stickers.

- The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Vehicles are detected closely ahead.
- Banked roads.
- Road edges.
- Roads with poor lane markings.
- Sudden lighting changes.
- Vehicle modifications, e.g. tyres.

Switch off the system if the system is disturbed by tar marks, shadows, road cracks, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections.

Fuel

⚠ Danger

EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Turn the fan on using any setting that brings outside air into the vehicle. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

⚠ Danger

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

⚠ Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

When filling the fuel tank with an ethanol-petrol fuel blend, under no circumstances should fuel containing more than 10% ethanol be used.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

The use of fuel containing more than 10% ethanol may also affect your vehicle warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the fuel affects the specifications and quality of your vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is also important to note that when fuel containing ethanol is used, fuel consumption can be expected to increase due to the lower energy content of ethanol.

The vehicle may be refuelled with E10 and unleaded fuel containing no ethanol. It is acceptable to mix these fuels.

The use of any fuel, other than the fuel specified, may seriously damage the vehicle and may void the warranty. See *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *279*. Only clean fuel of good quality should be used.

Recommended Fuel

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

1.4L Engine

Use of clean unleaded petrol of 91 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 95 or 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

1.6L Engine

Use of clean premium unleaded petrol of 95 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a reduction in performance may be noticed.

Filling the Tank

The fuel filler is located behind the hinged fuel filler door on the driver's side of the vehicle.

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off the engine and mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a Holden dealer.

The fuel filler door can only be opened if the vehicle is unlocked. Release the fuel filler door by pushing the rear edge.

The fuel filler cap can be retained in the bracket on the filler flap.

To refuel, fully insert the filler hose nozzle.

After the automatic cut-off, the tank can be topped up by operating the fuel pump a maximum of two more times.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle.

Close the filler door and allow it to engage.

Clean any spilled fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible.

Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Maximum towing capacities (kg)

Engine	1.4L 4 cyl Petrol	1.6L 4 cyl Petrol
Braked Trailer	1200	1420
Unbraked Trailer	750	750

Note

Exceeding these values could affect your vehicle warranty.

Mandatory Equipment: Holden genuine towbar and Holden genuine wiring harness.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the Vehicle Warranty, to the extent Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your vehicle warranty, to the extent Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter it if the tailgate is open.

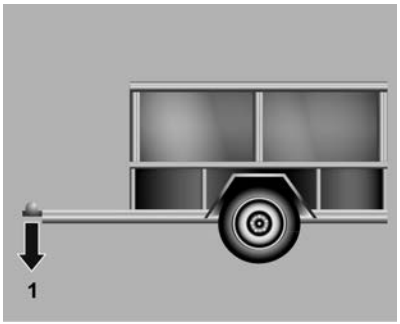
When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the tailgate open.
- Fully open the instrument panel vents and set the climate control to face or bi-level mode and outside air off.

For further information about carbon monoxide, see *Fuel* ⇨ *278*.

Trailer Recommendations

Tow Ball Load



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).

- The tow ball load should be 4% – 10% of the trailer mass and a maximum of 75 kg.

Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.

Important: Tow ball load must not exceed 75 kg.

Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *342*.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle and transferred onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden approved tow bar package fitted to the vehicle, or the vehicle's maximum towing capacity, which ever is lower.

Towing Precautions

- When towing, check and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *320*.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 Nm (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- Headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes, when descending steep hills.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.

- Ensure the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.
- If a tow bar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.
- The anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.
- The parking assist may be automatically deactivated when towing a trailer. If not, turn it off while a trailer is attached. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ *247*.
- To avoid vehicle damage, the power tailgate may not operate with the RKE transmitter when a trailer is electrically connected.

Trailer Brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an Aggregate Trailer Mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in When Towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Vehicle Maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

The vehicle has a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature as part of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. If TSC detects the trailer is swaying, the vehicle's brakes are automatically applied.

When TSC is applying the brakes, flashes to notify the driver to reduce speed. If the trailer continues to sway, ESC will reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle.

TSC will not function if ESC is turned off. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *242*.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Accessories and Vehicle Modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Holden. Furthermore, such changes may impact fuel consumption, CO_2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the type approval, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Air Intakes

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

Caution

In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

Roo Bars

⚠ Warning

Fitting a roo bar may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in suburban areas, as they may increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 287
Accessories and Modifications 287
Vehicle Storage 287
Emission Information 287
Emission Control System 288

Vehicle Checks
Bonnet 289
Engine Compartment Overview 291
Engine Oil 294
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 296
Engine Coolant 296
Engine Overheating 297
Washer Fluid 299
Brakes 299
Brake Fluid 299
Battery 300
Wiper Blade Replacement 301

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 302
Halogen Headlamps 303
Taillamps 304
Side Turn Signal Lights 310
Licence Plate Lamp 311

Electrical System
Fuses 312
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 313
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 315
Rear Fuse Panel 317

Vehicle Tools
Tools 319

Wheels and Tyres
Tyres 320
Tyre Pressure 320
Tread Depth 321
Tyre Rotation 321
Buying New Tyres 322
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 322
Tyre Chains 323
Tyre Changing 323

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 328

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 330
Towing Another Vehicle 332

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 333
Interior Care 335
Floor Mats 336

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-genuine accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance, safety and durability.

These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Genuine Holden accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer for assistance with the Genuine Holden accessories that are available for your vehicle.

Vehicle Storage

Storage for a Long Period of Time

If the vehicle is to be stored for several months:

- Wash and wax the vehicle.
- Clean and preserve the rubber seals.
- Fill the fuel tank completely.
- Change the engine oil.
- Drain the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the coolant antifreeze and corrosion protection.
- Adjust tyre pressure to the value specified for full load.
- Park the vehicle in a dry, well ventilated place. Set shift lever to P (Park) to prevent the vehicle from rolling.
- Do not apply the parking brake.
- Open the bonnet, close all doors and lock the vehicle.
- Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Beware that all systems are not functional, e.g. anti-theft system.

Putting Back into Operation

When the vehicle is to be put back into operation:

- Connect the clamp to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Activate the electronics of the power windows. See *Power Windows* ⇨ *44*.
- Check tyre pressure.
- Fill the washer fluid reservoir.
- Check the engine oil level.
- Check the coolant level.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when

exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by your Holden Dealer.

Owner Responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

⚠ Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance Requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance Schedule in your Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by a Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that all fluid levels are checked weekly.

Reducing Fuel Consumption

Engine

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *346*.

Wheel Alignment

Maintain correct front and rear wheel alignment.

Warm-ups and Idling

Avoid long engine warm-ups. They are unnecessary and waste fuel.

Avoid long engine idling.

Accelerating, Driving and Braking

Accelerate gently and avoid rapid starts.

Drive the vehicle at steady speeds where possible (after running-in).

Riding the Brake

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when you do not intend to brake.

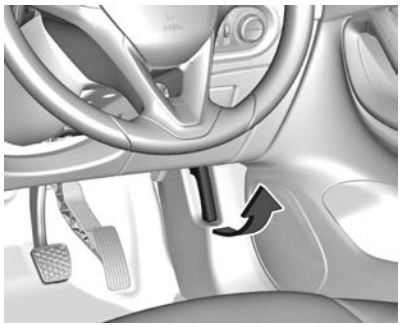
Air Conditioning

Switch off the air conditioning when not required, however, once every 2 weeks, with the engine running, switch the air conditioning on for 5 to 10 minutes to lubricate the seals (even in winter).

Vehicle Checks

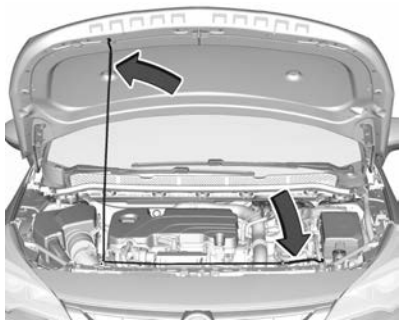
Bonnet

Opening



Pull the release lever and return it to its original position.

Move the safety catch lever to the side and open the bonnet.

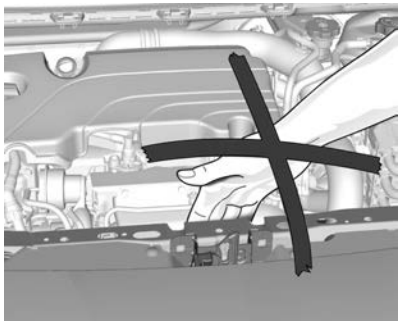


Raise the bonnet support and fit securely in the bonnet recess.

Note

If the bonnet is opened during an Autostop, the engine will be restarted automatically for safety reasons. See *Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature* ⇨ *228*.

Performing Work



⚠ Warning

Only perform engine compartment checks when the ignition is off. The cooling fan may start operating automatically, even if the ignition is off.

⚠ Danger

The ignition system uses extremely high voltage. Do not touch.

Closing

Check there are no objects left in the engine compartment.

Remove the bonnet support from the bonnet and place securely into the holder.

Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (approx. 30 cm). Check the bonnet is engaged.

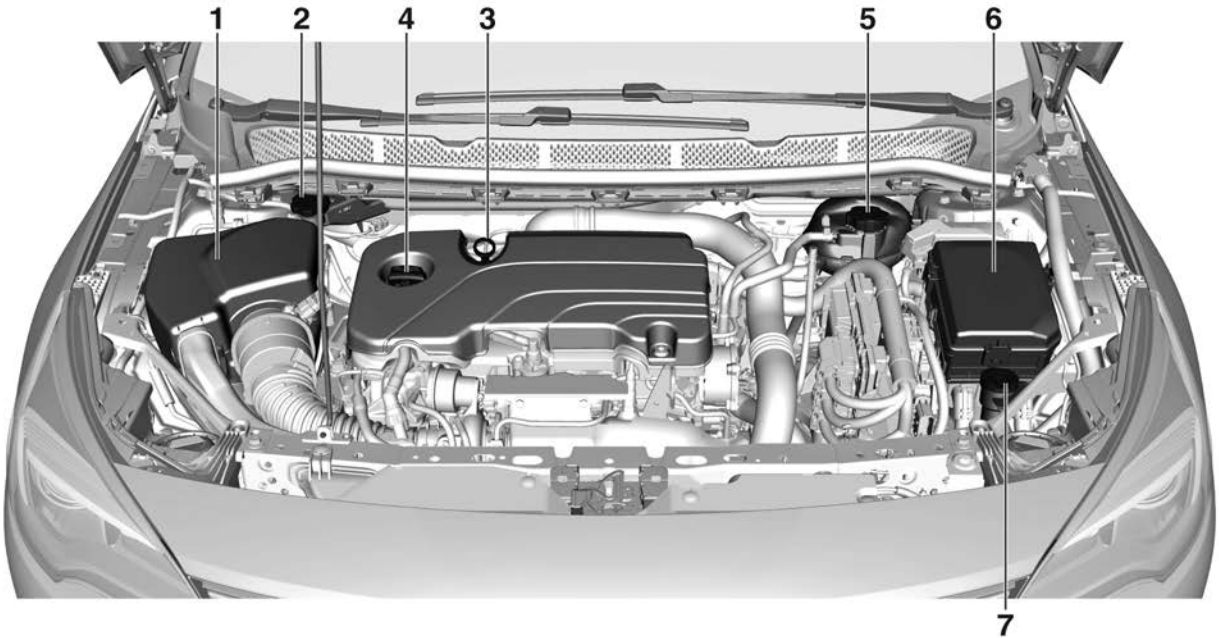
Caution

To avoid denting the bonnet panel, do not press the bonnet into the latch.

⚠ Warning

If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

Engine Compartment Overview

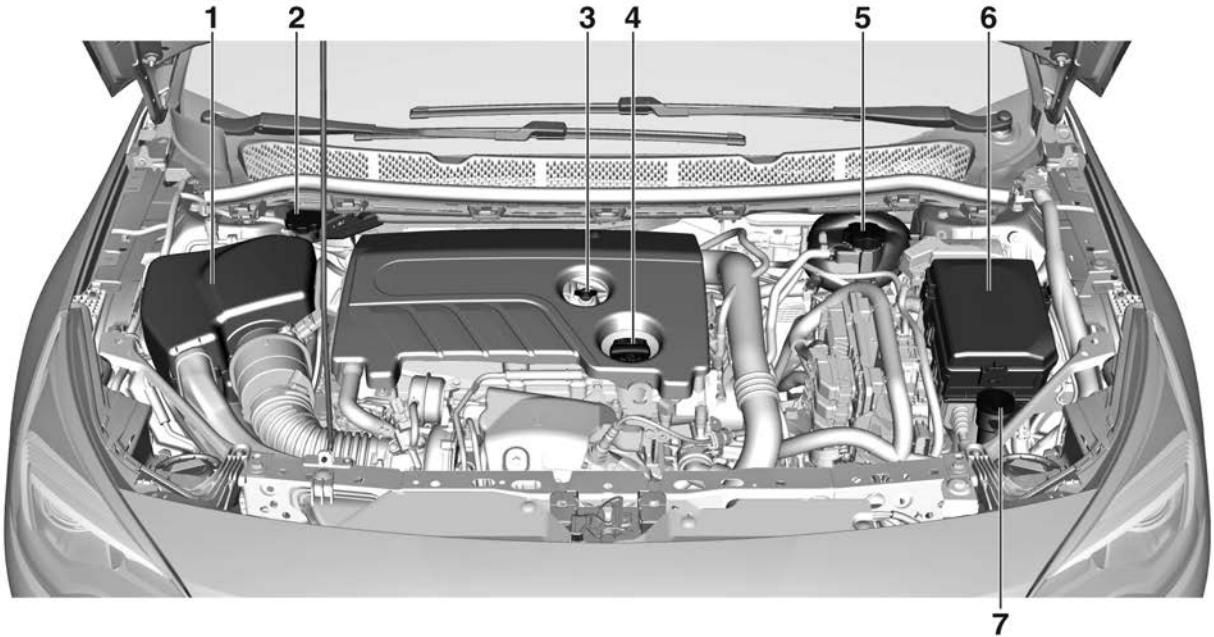


1.4L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *296*.
2. Brake and Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *299*.
3. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *294*.
4. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *294*.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *296*.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *313*.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *299*.

Note

The vehicle battery is located in the rear compartment. See *Battery* ⇨ *300*.



1.6L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *296*.
2. Brake and Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *299*.
3. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *294*.
4. Engine Oil Filler Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *294*.
5. Engine Coolant Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *296*.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *313*.
7. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *299*.

Note

The vehicle battery is located in the rear compartment. See *Battery* ⇨ *300*.

Engine Oil

⚠ Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested can cause illness or death.

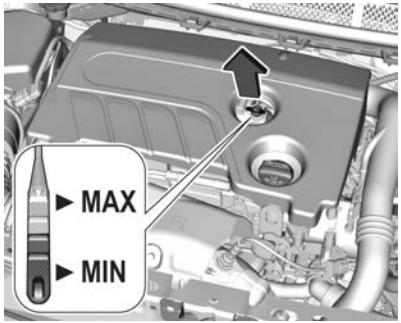
Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

Checking Oil Level

The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least 10 minutes.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.



2. Remove the dipstick and wipe clean
3. Reinsert the dipstick firmly.
4. Remove and read the oil level. The level should be between the MIN and MAX marks. Add oil if the level is at or below the MIN mark.

Dilution

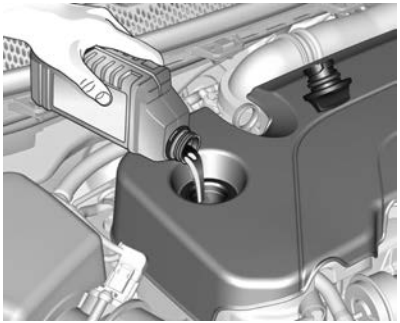
When a vehicle is frequently driven on short trips, the engine often fails to reach normal operating temperatures:

- The oil becomes diluted by fuel and moisture that settles in the oil pan.
- This may raise the oil level creating a false reading on the engine oil dipstick.

For example, in a vehicle that has accumulated 1,500 km of short distance or intermittent city operation and has consumed a normal amount of oil, the level may not have dropped from the upper area/mark, due to dilution. If this vehicle is driven for some distance at highway speeds the dilution elements evaporate, resulting in a sudden drop in oil level.

Adding Engine Oil

See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *338* and *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *346*.



1. Rotate the engine oil filler cap anticlockwise and remove.
2. Add enough oil to reach within the MAX mark.
3. Check the level on the dipstick and add further oil if necessary.

   The engine oil must not exceed the MAX mark.

Caution
Overfilled engine oil must be drained or suctioned out.

4. Replace the engine oil filler cap tightly by rotating clockwise.

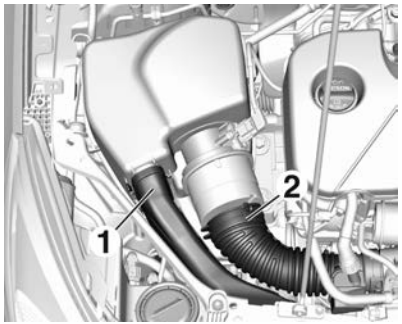
Note

Non-detergent and other low quality oils, the use of break-in oil, tune up compounds, friction reducing compounds and other supplemental additives are not recommended. Their use increases costs, may be detrimental to the operation of the vehicle and may void the vehicle warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended fluid to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

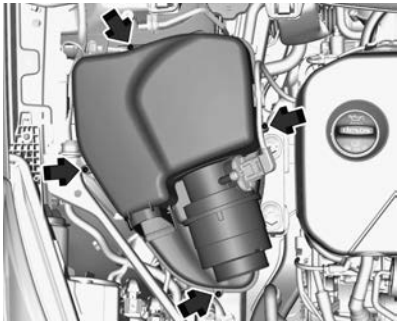
Engine Oil Change Intervals

Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



1. Unclip and remove the air intake duct (1).
2. Loosen the hose clamp and disconnect the air outlet hose (2).



3. Remove the four screws and remove the air cleaner housing.
4. Lift out the air filter.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct operating temperature.

⚠ Warning

An under bonnet electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They may be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

The engine cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DexCool® engine coolant mixture. This coolant needs to be checked and changed at appropriate intervals. See

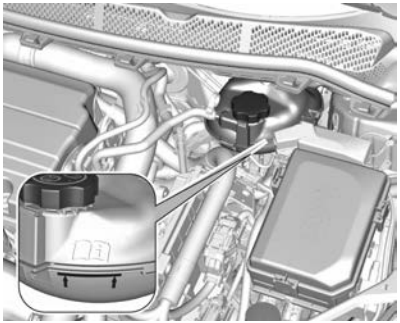
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ⇨ *338* and refer to the Service & Warranty booklet.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *297*.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.

Check the coolant level in the engine coolant tank when the engine is cold.



When cold, the coolant level should be above the filling line on the front of the coolant tank. Top up if the level is low, see “Adding Coolant” further in this section.

Adding Coolant

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

Top up with the recommended coolant. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *338*.

If no coolant concentrate is available, use clean tap water or distilled water. Install the cap tightly.

Have the coolant concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a dealer.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an engine coolant temperature gauge on the instrument cluster and overheat messages in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) to warn of engine overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *93*. The DIC also displays overheat messages.

The decision may be made not to lift the bonnet when the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone or an engine overheat DIC message displays, but instead to get service help right away.

If the decision to lift the bonnet is made, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface. Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone and an overheat DIC message is displayed with no sign of steam:

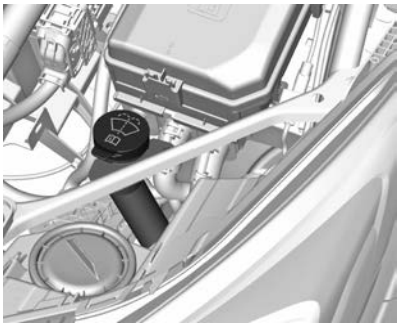
1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front. If the engine coolant temperature gauge does not go back to the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message does not display, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message still displays, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away. If overheat messages appear repeatedly, see your dealer.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message displays, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Washer Fluid



Fill with clean water mixed with a suitable quantity of approved windscreen washer fluid.

Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they may damage the windscreen wiper blade rubbers.

Ensure the cap is secured.

Brakes

In the event of the brake linings reaching their minimum thickness, a squealing noise sounds during braking.

Continued driving is possible but have the brake lining replaced as soon as possible.

Once new brake linings are installed, do not brake unnecessarily hard for the first few journeys.

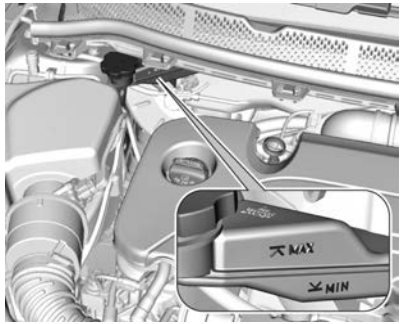
Brake Fluid

Note

For manual transmission vehicles, the brake fluid reservoir is also used for the hydraulic clutch system.

⚠ Warning

Brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.



The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX marks. If fluid level is below MIN, seek the assistance of a dealer.

Only top up with the specified brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *338*.

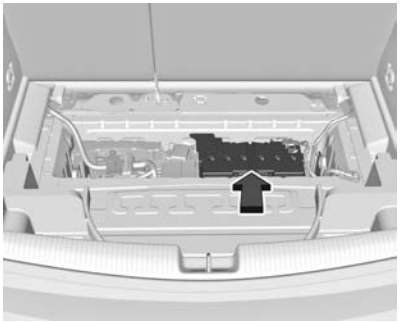
Battery

⚠ Warning

Batteries emit an explosive gas mixture which may be ignited. Therefore, you should keep sparks and flames away from the battery at all times. Never smoke near a battery.

Batteries contain sulphuric acid. If acid contacts skin or clothing, flush immediately with plenty of water. In case of eye contact, flush with plenty of water and contact a doctor immediately. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash off immediately.

Take care with all metal objects and tools including items you may wear (for example jewellery, rings and metal watch bands) near battery terminals.



The vehicle battery is in the rear compartment below the load compartment cover.

There are connecting points for jump starting in the engine compartment. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *328*.

The vehicle battery is maintenance-free provided the driving profile allows sufficient charging of the battery. Short-distance-driving and frequent engine starts can discharge the battery. Avoid the use of unnecessary electrical consumers.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Storing the vehicle for more than four weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery. Ensure the ignition is turned off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle battery.

Vehicle Battery Replacement

Note

Any deviation from the instructions given in this section may lead to temporary deactivation or disturbance of the stop-start system.

When the vehicle battery is being replaced, ensure there are no open ventilation holes in the vicinity of the positive terminal. If a ventilation hole is open in this area, it must be

closed off with a dummy cap, and the ventilation in the vicinity of the negative terminal must be opened.

Ensure that the battery is always replaced by the same type of battery.

We recommend that you have the vehicle battery replaced by a dealer.

Vehicle Battery Charging

⚠ Warning

On vehicles with stop-start system, ensure the charging potential does not exceed 14.6 volts when using a battery charger. Otherwise the vehicle battery might be damaged.

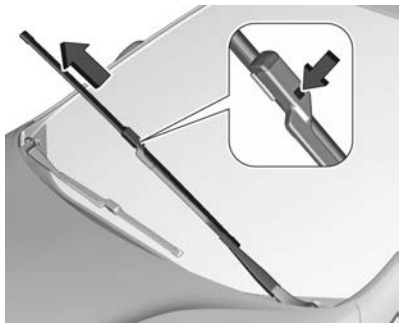
Warning Label

Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the vehicle battery out of reach of children.
- The vehicle battery contains sulphuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive petrol may be present in the vicinity of the vehicle battery.

Wiper Blade Replacement

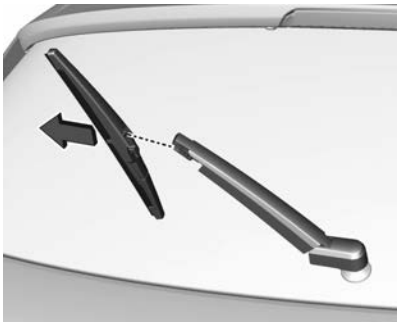
Windscreen



1. Lift the wiper arm until it stays in the raised position.
2. Press the button to disengage the wiper blade and remove.

3. Attach the replacement wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm. Push until it engages.
4. Lower the wiper arm carefully.

Rear Window



1. Lift the wiper arm.
2. Disengage wiper blade as shown in illustration and remove.
3. Attach the replacement wiper blade slightly angled to the wiper arm. Push until it engages.
4. Lower wiper arm carefully.

Bulb Replacement

Turn the ignition off and switch off the relevant lamp or close the doors.

Only hold a new bulb at the base. Do not touch the bulb glass with bare hands.

Use only the same bulb type for replacement. Replace headlamp bulbs from within the engine compartment.

After a bulb replacement, turn the ignition on, operate and check the lamps.

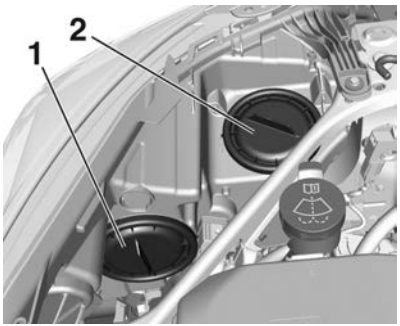
Bulbs to be Replaced by a Dealer

The following bulbs or LEDs should be changed by a dealer:

- LED headlamps.
- Front turn signal lamps.
- Daytime running lamps.
- LED tail and brake lamps
- Interior and load compartment lamps.

Halogen Headlamps

Halogen headlamps with separate bulbs for low beam and high beam.

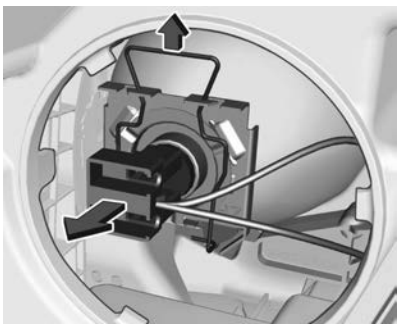


Low beam (**1**) – outer bulb.

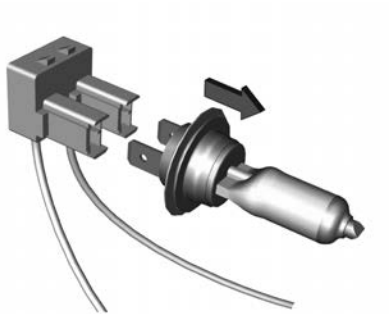
High beam (**2**) – inner bulb.

Low Beam

1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.

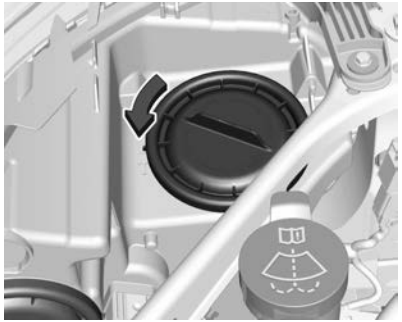


2. Disengage the spring clip from the retainer. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.

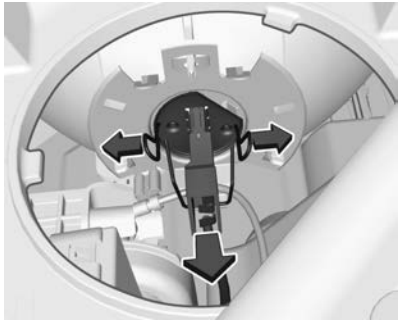


3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

High Beam



1. Rotate the cap anticlockwise and remove it.



2. Disengage the spring clip from the retainer. Withdraw the bulb holder from the reflector housing.

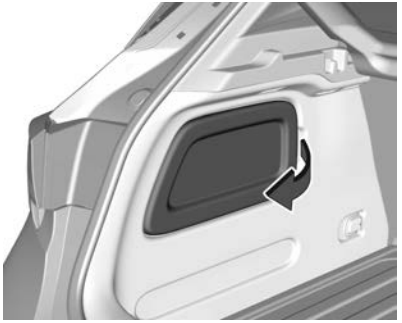
3. Detach the bulb from the bulb holder and replace the bulb.
4. Insert the bulb holder.
5. Fit the cap and rotate clockwise.

Taillamps

Rear Turn Signal, Reverse and Rear Fog Lamps

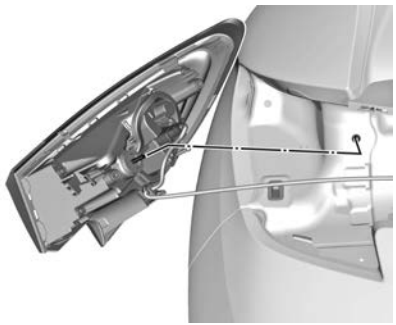
Hatchback

Lamp in the Body

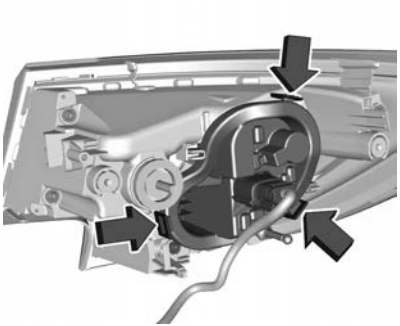


1. Remove the cover on that side.

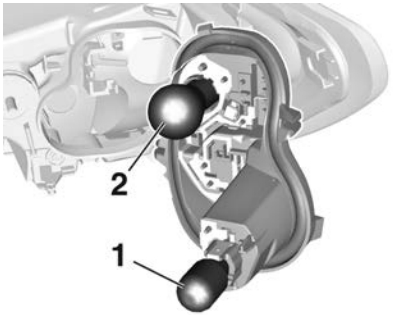
2. Unscrew the two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the tail lamp assembly from the recess and remove.
4. Detach the cable from the retainer.

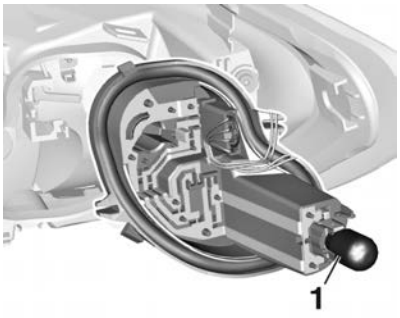


5. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the lamp.
6. Remove the bulbs.
   - Without LED tail lamps / brake lights:



(1) Turn signal
(2) Tail lamp / Brake light

- With LED tail lamps / brake lights:



(1) Turn signal

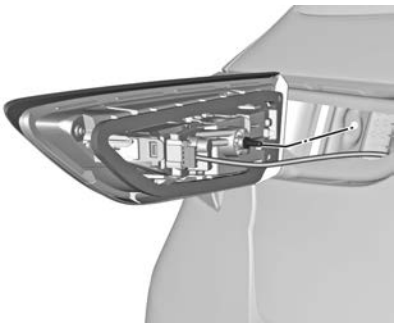
7. Attach the bulb carrier to the lamp assembly.
8. Attach the cable to the retainer.
9. Attach the lamp assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the rear compartment.

   Attach the cover.

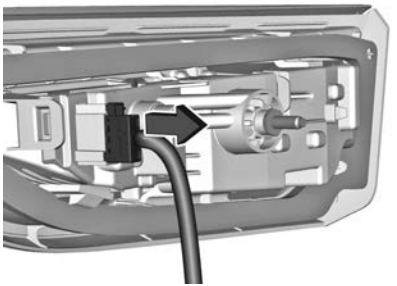
Lamp in the Tailgate

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

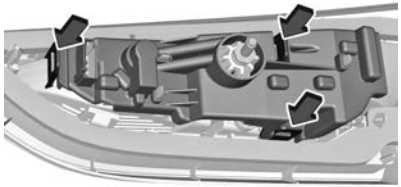
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.



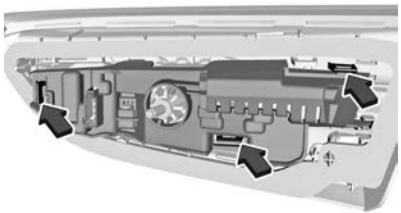
3. Carefully withdraw the lamp assembly from the recesses and remove.



4. Detach the plug from the light assembly.
5. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the lamp.

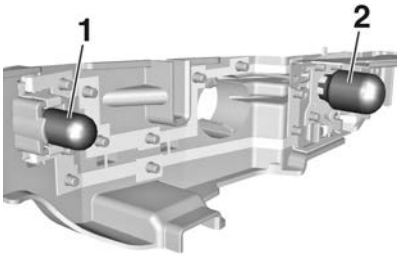


- Without LED tail lamps / brake lights.



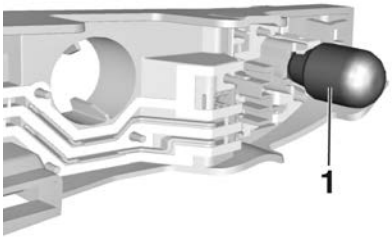
- With LED tail lamps / brake lights.

6. Remove the bulbs.
   - Without LED tail lamps / brake lights:



(1) Tail lamp
(2) Rear fog light (right-hand) / Reverse light (left-hand)

- With LED tail lamps / brake lights:



(1) Reverse light

7. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail lamp assembly and connect the plug.
8. Fit the lamp assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside.

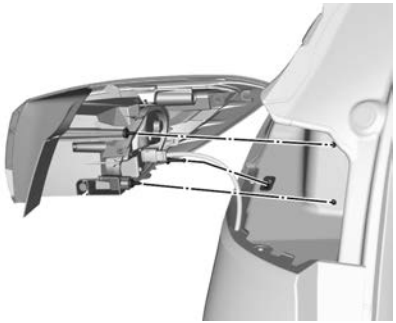
   Attach the cover.

Sportwagon

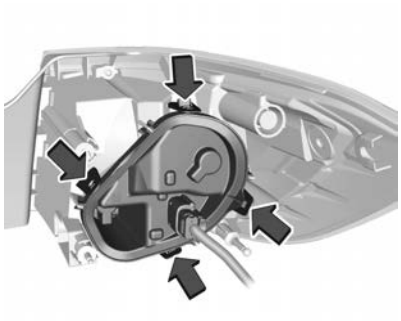
Lamp in the Body

1. Remove the cover on that side.

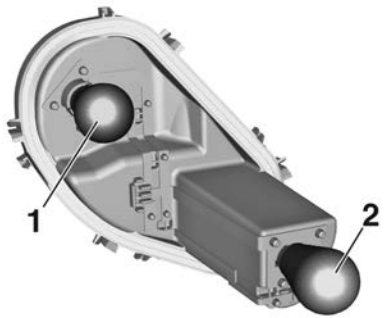
2. Unscrew the two plastic securing nuts from the inside by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the tail lamp assembly from the recess and remove.
4. Detach the cable from the retainer.



5. Press the four retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the lamp.
6. Remove the bulbs.



(1) Tail lamp / Brake light
(2) Turn signal

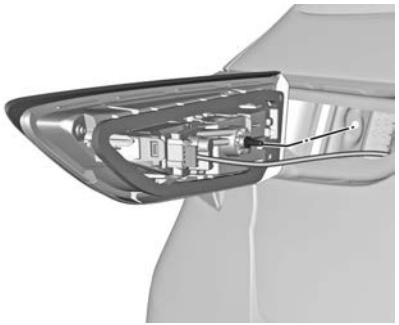
7. Attach the bulb carrier to the lamp assembly.
8. Attach the cable to the retainer.
9. Attach the lamp assembly to the vehicle body and tighten the securing nuts from the inside of the rear compartment.

   Attach the cover.

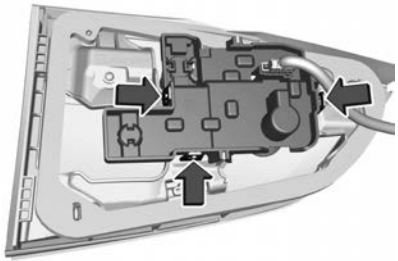
Lamp in the Tailgate

1. Release the cover in the tailgate and remove it.

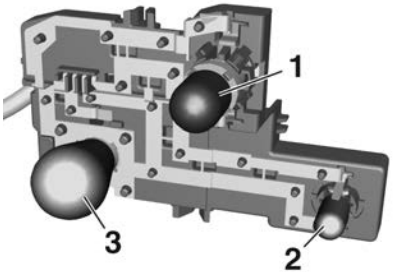
2. Unscrew the plastic securing nut by hand.



3. Carefully withdraw the lamp assembly from the recesses and remove.



4. Press the three retaining lugs and remove the bulb carrier from the lamp.
5. Remove the bulbs.

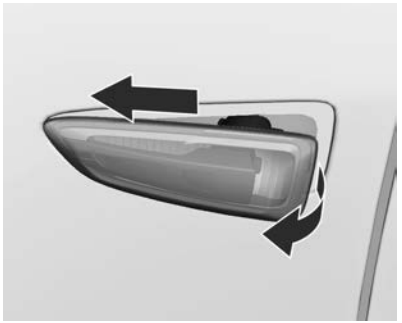


(1) Reverse light
(2) Tail lamp
(3) Rear fog light (right-hand)

6. Insert the bulb carrier into the tail lamp assembly.
7. Fit the lamp assembly on the tailgate and tighten the screw from the inside.

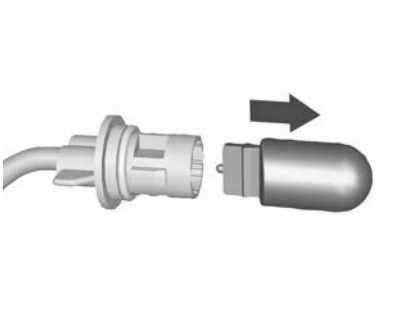
   Attach the cover.

Side Turn Signal Lights



1. Slide the lamp housing forward and remove it from the rear.

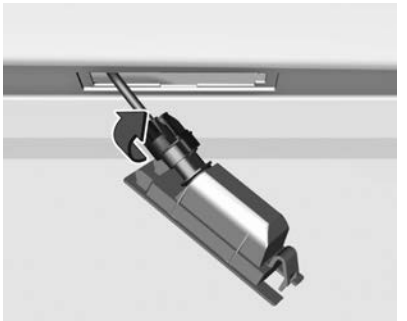
2. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from the housing.



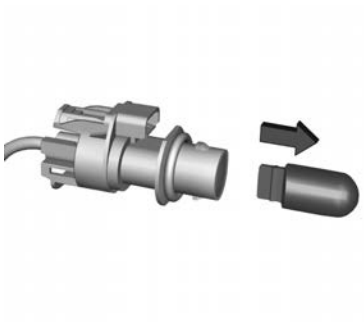
3. Pull the bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
4. Insert the bulb holder and turn clockwise.
5. Insert the front of the lamp, slide it forward and insert the rear into place.

Licence Plate Lamp

1. Insert a screwdriver into the recess of the lamp cover. Press to the side and release the retainer.



2. Remove the lamp downwards, taking care not to pull on the cable.
3. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise and remove from the lamp housing.



4. Pull the bulb from bulb holder and replace it.
5. Insert the bulb holder into the lamp and turn clockwise.
6. Insert the lamp, and ensure the retainer engages securely.

Electrical System

Fuses

The replacement fuse rating must match the rating of the defective fuse.

Depending on model, there are up to three fuse boxes in the vehicle:

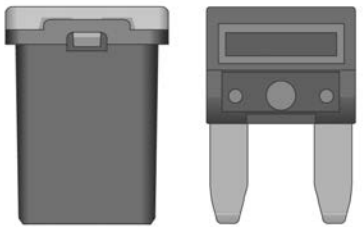
- Engine compartment.
- Instrument panel.
- Rear compartment.

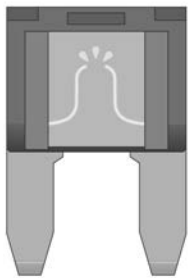
Before replacing a fuse, turn off the switch and the ignition.

A blown fuse can be recognised by its melted wire.

Caution
Do not replace the fuse until the cause of the fault has been rectified.

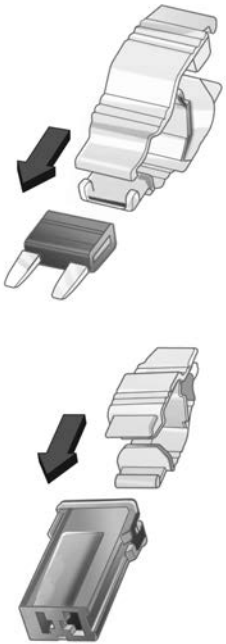
Some functions are protected by several fuses. Fuses may be fitted for some features not fitted to the vehicle.





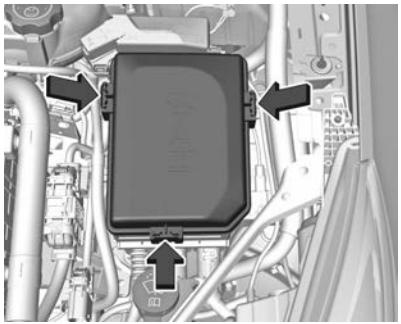
Fuse Extractor

A fuse extractor may be located in the fuse box in the engine compartment.



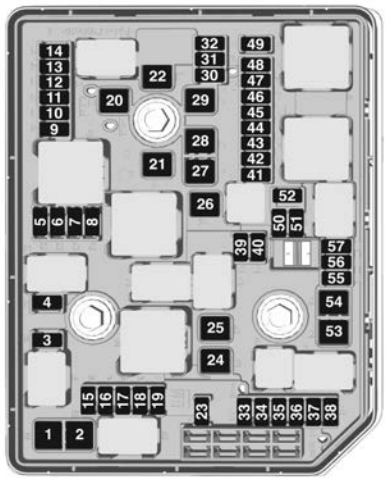
Place the fuse extractor on the various types of fuse from the top or side, and withdraw fuse.

Engine Compartment Fuse Block



The fuse box is in the front left of the engine compartment.

Disengage the cover and remove it.



Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

Fuses	Circuit
1	Starter
2	Starter
3	Exhaust sensor
4	Engine control module
5	Engine functions
6	Transmission control module
7	Forward collision alert/ Adaptive cruise control
8	Engine control module
9	Climate control system
10	Diesel exhaust system
11	Tailgate locking system, Transmission
12	Seat lumbar massage
13	After boil pump
14	Diesel exhaust system
15	Exhaust sensor
16	Fuel injection
17	Fuel injection
18	Diesel exhaust system
19	Diesel exhaust system
20	-
21	-
22	ABS
23	Washer system for windscreen and rear window
24	Washer Headlamp
25	Diesel fuel heating
26	Transmission control module
27	Power tailgate module
28	-
29	Heated rear window
30	Mirror defrost
31	Anti theft warning module
32	DC transformer/LED display/ Electrical heater/ Climate control/ Glow plug controller
33	Anti theft warning horn
34	Horn
35	Power outlet load compartment
36	Right high beam (Halogen)/ Right low beam (LED)
37	Left high beam (Halogen)
38	LED headlight/ Automatic headlight range adjustment
39	Front fog light

Fuses	Circuit
40	Central Gateway Module
41	Water in fuel sensor/ Water pump
42	Manual headlight range adjustment
43	Fuel pump
44	Rear view camera/ Inside rear view mirror/ Trailer module
45	LED headlight left/ Automatic headlight range adjustment left
46	Instrument cluster
47	Steering column lock
48	Rear wiper
49	Outside rear view mirror
50	LED headlight right/ Automatic headlight range adjustment right
51	Left low beam (LED)
52	Engine control module/ Transmission control module
53	Diesel exhaust system
54	Windscreen wiper
55	Electric rear seat folding
56	-
57	-

After having changed the defective fuse, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages. If the fuse box cover is not closed correctly, a malfunction may occur.

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

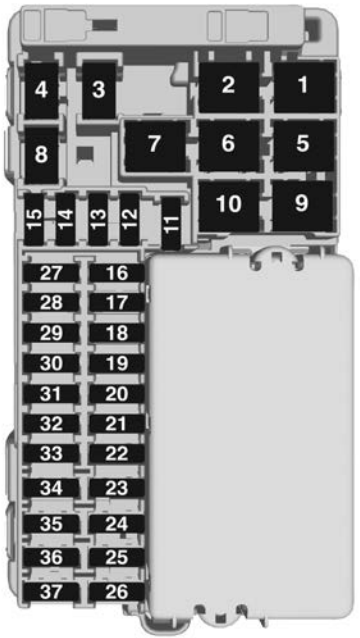
The fuse box is located behind the centre fascia cover. Pull the left side of the cover and then disengage the right side to remove.

After having changed defective fuse, close the fuse box cover:

1. Engage the right side of the cover.
2. Fit the left side of the cover ensuring the securing tab inserts correctly. Clip the cover in place securely.

Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.



Fuses	Circuit
1	Rear seat heating (vehicles without alarm horn)
2	Climate control system, fan
3	Power seat driver side
4	Power seat passenger side
5	Trailer module
6	Power window front
7	ABS
8	Heated steering wheel
9	Body control module 8
10	Power window rear
11	Sunroof
12	Body control module 4
13	Seat heating (vehicles without alarm horn)

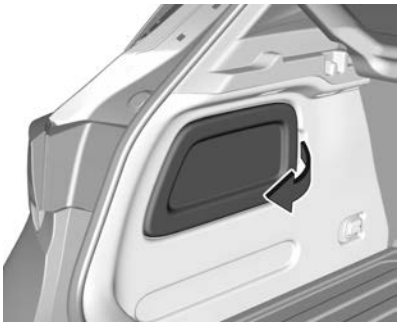
Fuses	Circuit
14	Exterior mirror
15	Body control module 1
16	Body control module 7
17	Body control module 6
18	Body control module 3
19	Data link connector
20	Airbag system
21	Climate control system
22	Central locking system, tailgate
23	Electronic key system
24	Power seat memory function
25	Airbag system steering wheel
26	Ignition switch/ Steering column lock

Fuses	Circuit
27	Body control module 2
28	USB socket
29	Cigarette lighter/ Power outlet front
30	Shift lever
31	Rear window wiper
32	Transmission control module
33	Anti-theft alarm system/ Power sounder
34	Parking assist/ Side blind spot alert/ Infotainment system/ USB socket
35	OnStar
36	Info display/ Instrument cluster/ CD player
37	Infotainment system, radio

Rear Fuse Panel

Rear Side Compartment

If equipped, the rear side compartment fuse box is located behind a cover in the left-hand side trim within the rear compartment.



Hatchback: Remove the cover.

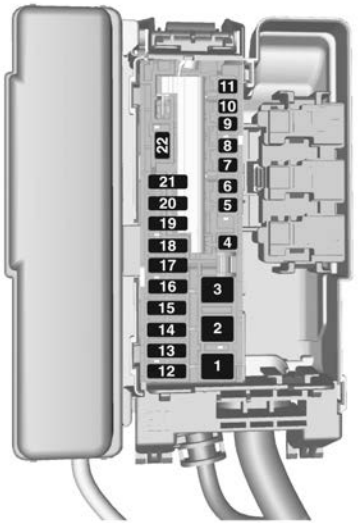
Sportwagon: Open the cover.

Disengage the fuse box cover and remove it. Hatchback shown, sport wagon is similar.

After having changed the defective fuse, close the fuse box cover and press until it engages.

Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses shown.

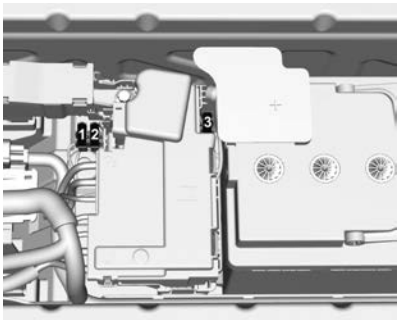


Fuses	Circuit
1	-
2	-
3	Trailer module
4	-
5	-
6	-
7	-
8	-
9	-
10	Service
11	-
12	Front seat heating (vehicles with alarm horn)
13	Rear seat heating (vehicles without alarm horn)
14	Ignition
15	Seat ventilation
16	Trailer outlet
17	Trailer outlet
18	-
19	-

Fuses	Circuit
20	-
21	-
22	-

Battery Compartment

Additional fuses are located near the vehicle battery. See *Battery* ⇨ *300*.

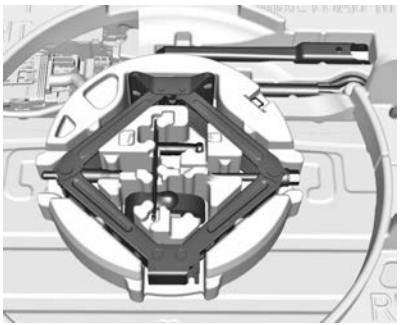


Fuses	Circuit
1	Fuel pump
2	Engine control module
3	Power supply

Vehicle Tools

Tools

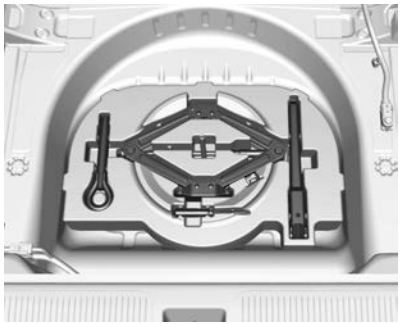
Hatchback



The jack, wheel wrench and other items such as a retaining strap for securing a deflated wheel and towing eye are located below the floor cover in the rear compartment .

See *Tyre Changing* ⇨ *323*.

Sportwagon



The jack, wheel wrench and other items such as a towing eye are located below the floor cover in the rear compartment .

See *Tyre Changing* ⇨ *323*.

Wheels and Tyres

Tyres

Tyre and Rim Condition

- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Also check the rims for damage. Contact a dealer if in doubt.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.

The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard on the front passenger door frame and also in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *346*.

Note

- Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold, as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of the tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.

- Check pressures when the vehicle has not been driven for over 3 hours. If tyre pressures must be checked immediately after driving more than 2 km, increase tyre placard pressure by 10%.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check the tyres. Simply looking at the tyres is not sufficient.
- Replace the valve dust caps.
- Check the condition of the tyre tread and inspect for stones or abnormal wear.
- For constant long distance driving, daily checking is recommended.

Tread Depth

Replace the tyres when:

- They are worn to the point where the tread indicators appear.

  The tyres originally fitted to the vehicle have built-in tread indicators. When only 1.5 mm of tread remains, these indicators show as plain bars across the tread pattern at regular intervals around the tyre.
- The tread or sidewall is cut, split, or cracked deep enough to expose the cord or fabric.
- The tyre has a bump or bulge in it, indicating some kind of internal damage.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut or other damage which cannot be repaired because of the size or location of the damage.
- The cord or fabric is showing.

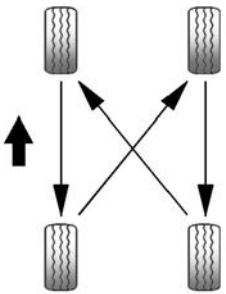
⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation

It is recommended that you rotate tyres at every scheduled maintenance service.

Driving conditions, driving techniques, vehicle loading and weather may warrant more frequent tyre checks and rotation.



Front and rear tyres can wear differently depending on:

- Types of roads driven on.
- Driving habits.
- Tyre pressures.
- Wheel alignment and balance.

New tyres should be fitted in pairs to the front. If replacing only one tyre, pair it on the same axle with the least worn of the other three.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle or the table in this manual for tyre size and load rating.

See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *320* or *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *346*.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride.
- Handling.
- Speedometer accuracy.
- Vehicle ground clearance.
- Vehicle payload capacity.
- Maximum vehicle speed.
- Tyre clearance.
- Tyre chain clearance.

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet, should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

⚠ Warning

Tyres with a lower speed or load rating are NOT acceptable for fitment to the vehicle.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the Vehicle Warranty and possibly the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

Improper wheel alignment or balance can cause:

- Tyres to wear fast and unevenly.
- The vehicle to pull to one side.
- Vibration.

If any of these problems exists, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Tyre condition is checked when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden Dealer. They are able to diagnose any unusual signs of wear. If tyres are rotated, it is recommended that balance be checked at the same time.

Tyre Chains

⚠ Warning

Tyre Chains are only permitted on front tyres of size; 205/55 R16.

- Use low profile chains that add no more than 12mm thickness to the tyre tread and inner sidewall.
- Use chains that are the correct size for the tyres.
- Install the chains on the tyres of the front axle only.
- Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

(Continued)

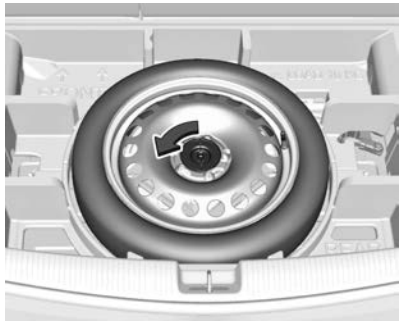
Warning (Continued)

- If the chains contact the vehicle, stop and re-tighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage the vehicle.
- Chains must not be fitted to a compact / temporary spare tyre.
- Check the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *346*

Whenever tyre chains are fitted, switch off the ESC. See *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)* ⇨ *242*.

Tyre Changing

The spare wheel is classified as a temporary spare wheel and corresponding speed limits apply. Seek the assistance of a dealer to check the applicable speed limit if you are unsure.



The spare wheel has a steel rim and is located in the load compartment beneath the floor cover.

To remove:

1. Open the rear compartment floor cover.
2. The spare wheel is secured with a retaining nut. Turn the nut anticlockwise and remove the spare wheel.

The vehicle tools are located under the spare wheel. See *Tools* ⇨ *319*.

3. After a wheel change, stow the full-size wheel in the rear compartment as described below.
4. After changing the wheel back to the full size wheel, place the spare wheel back in the wheel-well and secure with the retaining nut.

⚠ Warning

Storing the jack, a wheel or other equipment in the load compartment could cause injury if they are not secured correctly. During a sudden stop or a collision, loose equipment could strike someone.

Store and secure the wheel, jack and tools always in their original storage locations.

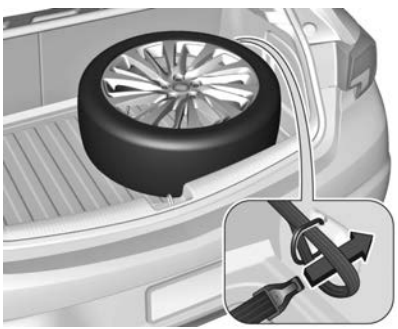
Stowing the Full Size Wheel

Hatchback

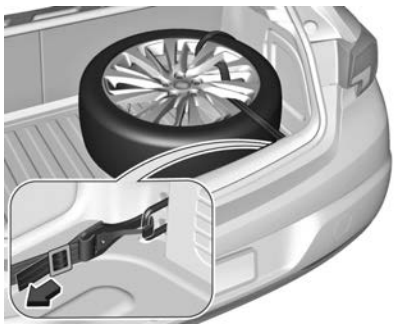
The spare wheel well is not designed for tyre sizes other than the spare wheel. A damaged full size wheel must be stowed in the rear compartment and secured with the strap supplied with the tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *319*.

To secure the wheel:

1. Position the wheel facing upwards close to one sidewall of the rear compartment.



2. Place the loop end of the strap through the front tie down point on the appropriate side.
3. Place the hook end of the strap through the loop and pull it until the strap is fastened securely to the tie-down.



4. Insert the strap through the spokes of the wheel as shown.
5. Mount the hook to the rear tie-down point.
6. Tighten the strap and secure it using the buckle.

⚠ Danger

Always drive with the rear seat backrests folded up and engaged when stowing a full size wheel in the load compartment.

Sportwagon

A damaged full size wheel can be stowed in the spare wheel well.

Remove the wheel centre cap by pushing from the inside and stow the wheel outside down in the wheel well. Secure with the wing nut.

Temporary Spare Wheel

Only fit one temporary spare wheel. Do not drive faster than 80 km/h. Take curves slowly. Do not use for a long period of time.

If your vehicle gets a flat tyre on the rear while towing another vehicle, fit the temporary spare wheel in the front and the full sized tyre at the rear.

Tyre Changing

Note

Use the jack only to change wheels in case of puncture.

The jack is maintenance-free.

No people or animals may be in the vehicle when it is jacked-up.

Never crawl under a jacked-up vehicle.

Do not start the vehicle when it is raised on the jack.

Clean wheel nuts and thread with a clean cloth before mounting the wheel.

If the ground on which the vehicle is standing is soft, a solid board (max. 1 cm thick) should be placed under the jack.

Remove heavy objects from the vehicle before jacking.

⚠ Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

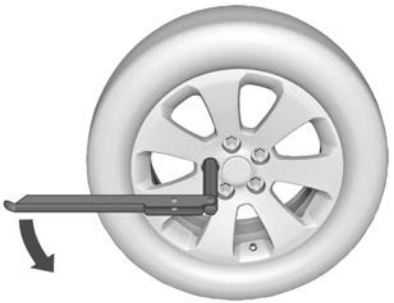
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

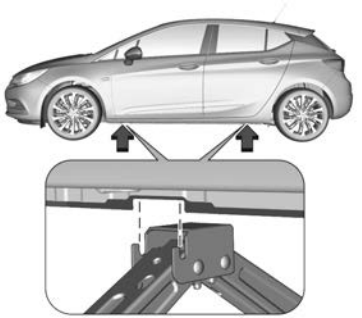
The vehicle may have a steel temporary spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h. Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

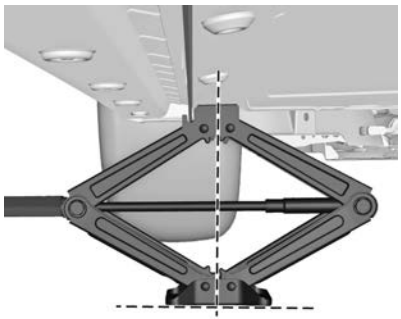
1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm and non-slip surface. The front wheels must be in the straight-ahead position.
2. Apply the parking brake and for automatic transmission engage **P** (Park) or for manual transmission engage first or reverse gear. If required, switch the hazard warning flashers on.
3. Remove the spare wheel as previously described.
4. If fitted, remove the wheel nut caps with a screwdriver. To protect the wheel, place a soft cloth between the screwdriver and the wheel.



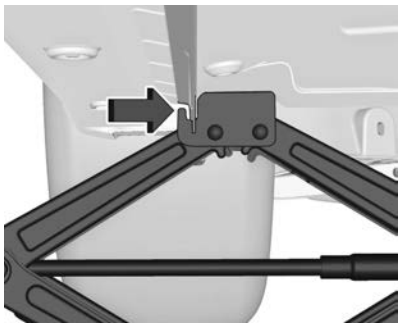
5. Fold out the wheel wrench and fit onto a wheel nut ensuring it locates securely. Loosen each wheel nut by half a turn.



6. Position the jack under the vehicle jacking point closest to the wheel being changed.



7. Set the jack to the required height and position it directly below the jacking point in a manner that prevents it from slipping.



Ensure the edge of the body fits into the notch of the jack.

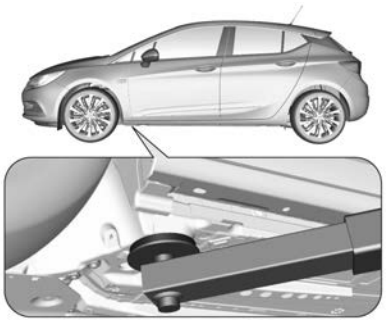
8. Fit the wheel wrench onto the jack, and with the jack correctly aligned, rotate the wheel wrench until the wheel is sufficiently clear of the ground.
9. Unscrew the wheel nuts.
10. Change the wheel.
11. Fit the wheel nuts and tighten lightly.
12. Lower the vehicle.
13. Fit the wheel wrench onto a wheel nut and ensuring it is located securely, tighten each nut as tightly as possible in a crosswise sequence.

⚠ Warning

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 Nm (Newton metres). Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque, as wheel nuts which have not been tightened properly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

14. Install the wheel nut caps, if fitted.
15. Install the vehicle jacking point covers, if equipped.
16. Stow and secure the replaced wheel as previously described and the vehicle tools.
17. Check the tyre pressure of the installed wheel as soon as possible. Have the defective tyre renewed or repaired as soon as possible.

Lifting Position for Hoist



Front arm position of the lifting arm pad centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Rear arm position of the lifting arm pad centrally under the relevant vehicle jacking point.

Jump Starting

⚠ Warning

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be push or tow started. Therefore, if the battery is flat, jump start the vehicle.

Batteries produce explosive gases, contain corrosive acids and supply levels of electrical current high enough to cause burns. Therefore, adhere to the following when working near a battery:

- Do not attempt jump starting directly from the battery.
- Do not let the jumper lead clamps touch each other or other metal parts.
- Do not allow the jumper leads to contact any rotating engine components.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not use open flames or sparks near the battery.
- Do not smoke near the battery.
- Never use a quick charger to start the engine.
- The battery must be removed from the vehicle for recharging.
- Only use the recommended battery otherwise the vehicle systems may not work correctly. Refer to a dealer for battery replacement.
- Wear eye protection such as safety glasses and avoid leaning over the battery.
- Battery acid is corrosive. If it gets on your skin, wash with plenty of water immediately. If it gets in your eyes you should not only flush with

(Continued)

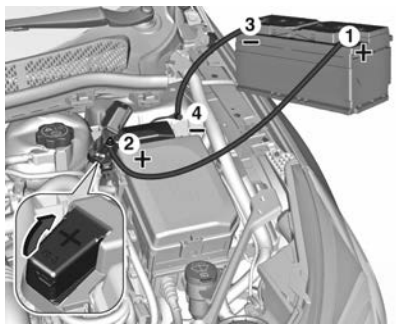
Warning (Continued)

lots of water, but should also seek medical help. Battery acid also damages paint and fabrics. To minimise damage, wash it off immediately.

- Remove rings, metal watch bands and other metal jewellery before working around the battery.

A vehicle with a discharged vehicle battery can be started using jump leads and the vehicle battery of another vehicle.

- Use jump leads with insulated terminals and a cross-section of at least 16 mm^2.
- Do not disconnect the discharged vehicle battery from the vehicle.
- Switch off all unnecessary electrical consumers such as the headlights, etc.
- The vehicles must not come into contact with each other during the jump starting process.
- Apply the parking brake, and place the automatic transmission in **P** (Park).
- Open the positive terminal protection caps of both vehicle batteries.



Lead connection order:

1. Connect the red lead to the booster battery positive terminal.

2. Connect the other end of the red lead to the positive terminal of your vehicle near the fuse box in the engine compartment.
3. Connect the black lead to the booster battery negative terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the black lead to a vehicle grounding point of your vehicle in the engine compartment.

Route the leads so they cannot catch on moving parts in the engine compartment.

To start the engine:

1. Start the engine of the vehicle providing the jump.
2. After five minutes, start the other engine.

   Start attempts should be made for no longer than 15 seconds at an interval of one minute.
3. Allow both engines to idle for approx. three minutes with the leads connected.
4. Switch on electrical consumers, e.g. headlights, heated rear window, of the vehicle receiving the jump start.
5. Reverse the above sequence exactly when removing leads.

Towing the Vehicle

To avoid causing damage, a flat-bed tow truck is the best method of towing the vehicle .

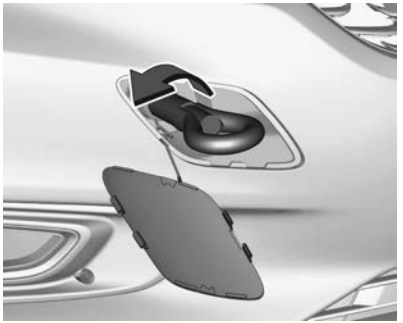
If a flat-bed tow truck is not available, use a standard tow truck in the following configuration:

- Raise the front of the vehicle with the rear wheels in contact with the road.
- Raise the rear of the vehicle and use a towing dolly to prevent the front wheels contacting the road.

Where a tow truck is not available, the vehicle can be towed as follows.

Carefully insert a screwdriver at the lower part of the cap and lever downwards to remove the cap.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *319*.



Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

As required, attach a tow rope or similar to the towing eye.

The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering the vehicle.

Turn the ignition on to release steering wheel lock and to permit operation of brake lights, horn and windscreen wiper. Move the shift lever to neutral. Release the parking brake.

Caution
Drive slowly. Accelerate smoothly and do not jerk the tow rope.

When the engine is not running, considerably more force is needed to brake and steer.

To prevent the entry of exhaust gases from the towing vehicle, switch on the air recirculation and close the windows.

The vehicle must be towed facing forwards. If the vehicle is towed with all four wheels on the ground, the maximum speed is 80 km/h and for a maximum distance of 100 km. In all other cases and if the transmission is defective, the front wheels must be raised off the ground.

Seek the assistance of a dealer.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert cap at the top and engage downwards.

Towing Another Vehicle

Carefully insert a screwdriver at the lower part of the cap and lever downwards to remove the cap.

The towing eye is stowed with the vehicle tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *319*.

Screw in the towing eye as far as it will go until it stops in a horizontal position.

The lashing eye at the rear underneath the vehicle must never be used as a towing eye.

Attach a tow rope or similar to the towing eye. The towing eye must only be used for towing and not for recovering a vehicle.

Caution
Drive slowly. Accelerate smoothly and do not jerk the tow rope.

After towing, unscrew the towing eye. Insert the cap with the upper flange into the recess and fix the cap by pushing. Stow the towing eye with the vehicle tools.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove the antenna and external accessories.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, ensure the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors greased by a Holden Dealer.

Caution

Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse the chamois frequently. Use a separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

⚠ Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Exterior Lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Caution

Condensation may temporarily appear on the inside of exterior lamp lenses after rain or washing the vehicle. Condensation occurs when there is a temperature difference between the inside and outside of the lamp allowing a fine mist on the inside surface of the lamp lens. This condensation will disappear when the vehicle is in a dry environment or the lamp is on. If water does collect in the lamp contact a Holden Dealer.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen, and below the front bumper when washing the vehicle.

Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.
- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

Caution

Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

Caution
Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

Interior Care

⚠ Warning
Many cleaning products are toxic, flammable or may damage the interior. When cleaning the interior, avoid volatile cleaners such as acetone, lacquer thinners, enamel reducers, nail polish removers, or cleaners such as laundry soaps, bleaches or reducing agents. Never use carbon tetrachloride, petrol or naphtha for any cleaning purpose. Ensure that the vehicle is well ventilated while using any cleaners and always follow the cleaning product manufacturer's recommendations. Water based cleaners, rather than solvent based cleaners, are recommended. Steam cleaning of seats is not recommended.

Interior and Upholstery

Only clean the vehicle interior, including the instrument panel fascia and panelling, with a dry cloth or interior cleaner.

The instrument panel should only be cleaned using a soft damp cloth.

Clean fabric upholstery with a vacuum cleaner and brush. Remove stains with an upholstery cleaner.

Clean seat belts with a mild, nonabrasive soap and lukewarm water.

After washing thoroughly, sponge the solution out of the belts.

Caution
Close Velcro fasteners as open Velcro fasteners on clothing could damage seat upholstery.

Plastic and Rubber Parts

Plastic and rubber parts can be cleaned with the same cleaner as used to clean the body. Use interior cleaner if necessary. Do not use any

other agent. Avoid solvents and petrol in particular. Do not use high pressure jet cleaners.

Floor Mats

- Pull the mat up at each retainer to remove the mat.
- Push the mat down onto the retainers to replace.

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the accelerator pedal and/or brake pedal. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury.

Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal.

Genuine Holden Accessory floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that Holden approved floor mats be purchased.
Non-genuine floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver's side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver's side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 337

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 338

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the correct intervals as specified.

Refer to your Service & Warranty booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Engine Oil Life System

The vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature and kilometres driven.

Based on driving conditions, the kilometres at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably.

For the oil life system to work correctly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed. When the system has calculated the oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A message is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1000 km.

It is possible that if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may indicate that an oil change is not necessary for a longer period than that shown in the service schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the service schedules outlined in the Service & Warranty booklet.

A Holden dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system.

To reset the system yourself after an oil change, see *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *101*.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol
Engine oil	5W-30 dexos (dexos1® Gen2)	
Coolant	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant	
Manual transmission fluid	SAE 70W	
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI	
Brake fluid	DOT 4 hydraulic brake fluid conforming to GMW3356	

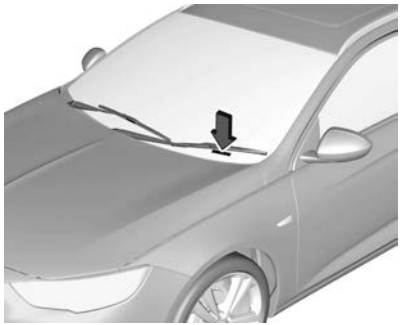
Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 339
Engine Identification 340
Identification Labels 340

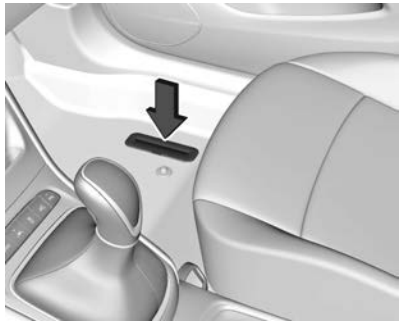
Vehicle Data
Engine Data 342
Vehicle Weight 342
Vehicle Dimensions 345
Capacities and Specifications 346
Tyre Pressure 346

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)



The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is visible through the windscreen.

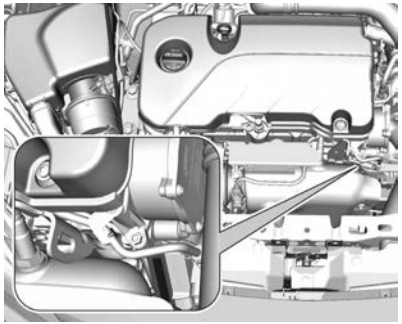


The VIN is also stamped on the floor panel on the driver's side; visible under the cover in the floor carpet.

It is also included on the vehicle compliance label.

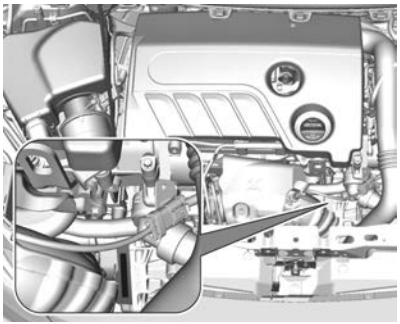
Engine Identification

1.4L Petrol Engine



The engine serial number is located on the vehicle front side of the engine block.

1.6L Petrol Engine



The engine serial number is located on the vehicle front side of the engine block.

Identification Labels

Compliance Label

The vehicle compliance label is located on the front left door frame.

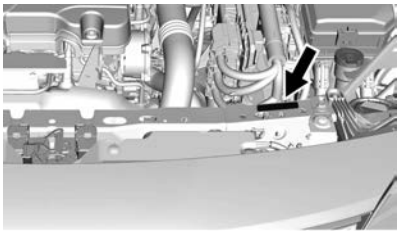
Information on the compliance label:

1. Approval number.
2. Manufacturer and vehicle model.
3. Category.
4. Number of seats.
5. Vehicle Identification Number (VIN).

Identification Label

An identification label is located on the front left door frame.

Built Date Label



The build date label is located on the front panel in the engine compartment.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine type	1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol
Engine	1399 cc	1598 cc
Engine power and torque	Refer to holden.com.au	
Fuel type	Petrol	
Octane rating (RON)*		
Recommended:	Unleaded 91	Premium unleaded 95
Possible:	Premium unleaded 95 or 98	Premium unleaded 98
Ethanol compatibility	E10	

*: For further information see *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *279*.

Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum Vehicle Carrying Capacity

Hatchback

Engine	Variant	Occupants (Average 68 kg each)	Luggage and Accessories (kg)	Total Load (kg)
1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	All	5	68	408
1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol	All	5	68	408

Sportwagon

Engine	Variant	Occupants (Average 68 kg each)	Luggage and Accessories (kg)	Total Load (kg)
1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	LS	5	238	578
1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	LT	5	211	551

Note

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See “Axle Loads” later in this section.

Axle Loads

Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Take the roof rack load into account when determining the rear axle load. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

Hatchback

Engine	Transmission	Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	Manual	930	910
	Automatic	950	910
1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol	Manual	980	920
	Automatic	1000	910

Sportwagon

Engine	Transmission	Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	Automatic	930	1000

Vehicle Dimensions

Variant	Length	Width Incl. Mirrors	Height	Wheelbase	Track: Front	Track: Rear
Hatchback	4386	2042	1485	2662	1530–1548	1537–1565
Sportwagon	4702	2042	1510	2662	1530–1548	1537–1565

The above figures are based on design dimensions.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine	1.4L 4 Cyl Petrol	1.6L 4 Cyl Petrol
Engine Oil (Refill incl. filter)	4.0 L	5.5 L
Coolant	5.1 L	6.3 L
Fuel Tank	48.0 L	

All capacities are approximate

Tyre Pressure

Hatchback

1.4L 4 Cylinder Engine

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure (kPa/PSI)						
		Front			Rear			Spare
		Comfort	ECO	Full	Comfort	ECO	Full	—
225/45 R17 SL 91V	17 x 7.5J	220/32	270/39	250/36	220/32	270/39	270/39	—
T115/70 R16 SL 92M	16 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	—	—	420/60

1.6L 4 Cylinder Engine

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure (kPa/PSI)						
		Front			Rear			Spare
		Comfort	ECO	Full	Comfort	ECO	Full	—
225/45 R17 SL 91V	17 x 7.5J	240/35	270/39	250/36	220/32	270/39	270/39	—
225/40 R18 XL 92W	18 x 7.5J	260/38	270/39	270/39	240/35	270/39	290/42	—
T115/70 R16 SL 92M	16 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	—	—	420/60

Sportwagon

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure (kPa/PSI)					
		Front			Rear		
		Comfort	ECO	Full	Comfort	ECO	Full
205/55 R16 SL 91V	16 x 7.0J	220/32	300/43	250/36	220/32	300/43	270/39
225/45 R17 SL 91V	17 x 7.5J	220/32	270/39	250/36	220/32	270/39	270/39

Customer Information

Customer Information
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 348
Owner Assistance 349

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Event Data Recorders 350

Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Dexos, Dexron, DexCool

Dexos®, Dexron®, and Dexcool® and their associated logos are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Made for iPod iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone®, iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod touch®, iPad® and Siri® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc.

Android

Android™ and GooglePlay™ are trademarks of Google Inc.

Owner Assistance

Holden Customer Care

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

Holden Dealerships

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

Holden Customer Care Office

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

Operating Hours

Weekdays: 8am – 7pm AEST

Saturday: 9am – 1pm AEST

Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Email

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
GPO Box 1714
Melbourne 3001

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O. VIN), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box

- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glove box.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is the quicker and more efficient means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this Owner's Handbook applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager
Holden Customer Care Centre
PO Box 11195
Ellerslie
Auckland 1542

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Event Data Recorders

Event Data Recorders

The vehicle has a number of sophisticated systems that monitor and control several vehicle data. Some data may be stored during regular operation to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions, other data is stored only in a crash or near crash event by systems commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

The systems may record data about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated (e.g. engine speed, brake application, seat belt usage). To read this data, special equipment and access to the vehicle are required. This will take place when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden dealer. Some data is electronically fed into global diagnostic systems.

The manufacturer will not access information about a crash event or share it with others except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee.
- In response to an official request of police or similar government office.
- As part of the manufacturer's defence in case of legal proceedings.
- As required by law.

In addition, the manufacturer may use the collected or received data:

- For the manufacturer's research needs.
- To make it available for research needs where appropriate confidentiality is maintained and need is shown.
- To share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with other organisations for research purposes.

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications 287
Accessory Power 228
Adaptive Cruise Control 260
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 114
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light 100
Add-On Electrical Equipment . . . 285
Adjustable Air Vents 220
Adjustments
  Seat, Initial Drive 50
Advanced Parking Assist 252
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 296
Air Conditioning 212, 214
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 221
Air Intake 221
Airbag System
  Check 64
  What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 64
Airbags
  Curtain 63
  Front 61
  Seat Belt Tensioner Light 96
  Side 62
Airbags (cont'd)
  System Check 60
Alarm System
  Anti-theft 39
Alert
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 274
AM-FM-DAB Radio 133, 169
Anchor Fittings
  Top Tether 69
Anti-theft
  Alarm System 39
Antilock Brake System (ABS) . . . 238
  Warning Light 98
Appearance Care
  Exterior 333
  Interior 335
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 148, 203
Armrest
  Front Seat 53
Armrest Storage 73
Audio
  Bluetooth 142, 175
  Theft-Deterrent Feature 125, 153
Automatic
  Engine Start/Stop Feature 228
  Headlamp System 113

Automatic (cont'd)
Transmission 233
Automatic Transmission
Electronic Driving Programs 235
Fault 236
Interruption of Power Supply 236
Manual Mode 235
Shift Lever 233
Transmission Display 233

B

Battery 300
Jump Starting 328
Power Protection 121
Voltage and Charging Messages 107
Blade Replacement, Wiper 301
Bluetooth
Overview 145, 198
Bluetooth Audio 142, 175
Bonnet 289
Boot
Cover 73
Brake
Parking, Electric 239
System Warning Light 97
Brakes 238, 299
Antilock 238
Assist 241
Fluid 299
Parking 239
Break-In, New Vehicle 224
Bulb Replacement
Halogen Headlamps 303
Headlamps 302
Licence Plate Lamps 311
Side Turn Signal Lights 310
Taillamps 304
Buying New Tyres 322
Buzzers, Warning 107

C

Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) 245
Capacities and Specifications 346
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 232
Tailgate 33
Cargo
Cover 74
Tie-Downs 75
Catalytic Converter 232
Caution, Danger, and Warning 3
Centre Console Lighting 121
Chains, Tyre 323
Charging System Light 96
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction Indicator) 96
Child Restraint Installation Locations 69
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 65
Installation Locations 69
ISOFIX 69
Older Children 65
Systems 66
Cleaning
Exterior Care 333
Interior Care 335
Climate Control Systems 212
Air Conditioning 212
Electronic 214
Heating 212
Clock 86
Cluster, Instrument 88
Compartments
Storage 71
Control System
Emission 288
Convex Mirrors 41

Coolant
Engine 296
Engine Temperature Gauge 93
Engine Temperature Warning Light 99
Cooling 212, 214
Cover
Cargo 74
Rear Floor Storage 73
Covers 118
Boot 73
Misted Lamps 118
Cruise Control 256
Adaptive 260
Light 100
Cupholders 71
Curtain Airbag System 63
Customer-installed Equipment, Notices 64

D

Danger, Warning, and Caution 3
Data Recorders, Event 350
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 113
Devices
USB 137, 172
Dimensions
Vehicle 345
Displays
Automatic Transmission 233
Service 94
Door
Ajar Light 101
Locks 28
Driver Assistance Systems 244
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 101
Driving
Electronic Programs 235
Environment 223

E

Electric Parking Brake 239
Electric Parking Brake Light 97
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 285
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 313
Fuses 312
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 315
Rear Fuse Panel 317
Electronic Climate Control System 214
Electronic Driving Programs 235
Electronic Stability Control 242
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 99
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning Light 99
Emission Control System 288
Emission Information 287
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 296
Automatic Start/Stop Feature 228
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator) 96
Compartment Overview 291
Coolant 296
Coolant Temperature Gauge 93
Coolant Temperature Warning Light 99
Exhaust 232
Oil Pressure Light 99
Overheating 297
Starting 226
Engine Data 342

Engine Identification 340
Enter Destination 184
Entry Lighting 121
Event Data Recorders 350
Exit Lighting 121
Exterior Lamp Controls 112

F

Fault, Automatic Transmission 236
Filter, Engine Air Cleaner 296
Fixed Air Vents 220
Flashers, Hazard Warning 117
Flat Tyre Changing 323
Floor Mats 336
Fluid
Brakes 299
Washer 299
Fog Lamps
Rear 118
Fog Light, Rear 100
Folding Mirrors 42
Following Distance Indication System 270
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 268
Front Airbag System 61
Front Seat Armrest 53
Front Seat Position Seats Adjustment 50
Front Seats
Adjustment 51
Heated 53
Front Storage 72
Fuel 278
Filling the Tank 280
Gauge 93
Low Fuel Warning Light 100
Recommended 279
Fuses 312
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 313
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 315
Rear Fuse Panel 317

G

Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature ... 93
Fuel 93
Odometer 92
Service Display 94
Speedometer 91
Tachometer 93
Gauges (cont'd)
Trip Odometer 92
Turn Signal 95
Gear Shifting Light 98
General Information
Vehicle Care 287
Glove Box 71
Guidance 190

H

Hands-Free Phone 149, 204
Hazard Warning Flashers 117
Head Restraints 48
Headlamp Leveling Control 117
Headlamps
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) 114
Automatic 113
Bulb Replacement 302
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 113
Halogen 303
High-Beam On Light 100
High/Low Beam Changer 113
Lamps On Reminder 100
Heated
Rear Window 46
Steering Wheel 82

Heated Front Seats 53
Heated Mirrors 42
Heating 212, 214
High-Beam On Light 100
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 241
Horn 14, 82
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 57
HVAC 212, 214

I
Identification Labels 340
Ignition Positions 224
Immobiliser 41
Light 100
Indicator
Vehicle Ahead 98
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 65
Information
Service 337
Information on Loading the Vehicle 78
Instrument Cluster 88
Instrument Panel Overview 6
Interior Lamps 119
Interruption of Power Supply 236
Introduction 2, 124, 153
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 69

J
Jump Starting 328

K
Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 23
Keys 21

L
Lamps
Daytime Running (DRL) 113
Exterior Controls 112
Interior 119
Licence Plate 311
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) 96
Misted Covers 118
On Reminder 100
Reading 120
Rear Fog 118
Reversing 118
Side Turn Signal 310
Sun Visor 120
Lamps (cont'd)
Taillamps 304
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 276
Lane Keep Assist Light 98
Leveling Control
Headlamp 117
Lighting
Adaptive Forward 114
Centre Console 121
Entry 121
Exit 121
Illumination Control 119
Lights
Adaptive Forward Lighting (AFL) Light 100
Airbag and Seat Belt Tensioner 96
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 98
Brake System Warning 97
Charging System 96
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 96
Cruise Control 100
Door Ajar 101
Electric Parking Brake 97
Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off 99

Lights (cont'd)
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)/Traction Control System (TCS) Indicator Warning 99
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 99
Engine Oil Pressure 99
Fog Lamp, Rear 100
Gear Shifting 98
High-Beam On 100
High/Low Beam Changer 113
Immobiliser 100
Lane Keep Assist 98
Low Fuel Warning 100
Seat Belt Reminders 95
Service Electric Parking Brake 97
Traction Control System (TCS) 99
Loading the Vehicle 78
Locks
Door 28
Safety 32
Low Fuel Warning Light 100

M

Maintenance
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 221
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 338
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 96
Manual Mode 235
Manual Transmission 237
Messages
Battery Voltage and Charging 107
Vehicle 106
Messaging
Text 201
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 43
Convex 41
Folding 42
Heated 42
Manual Rearview 43
Power 41
Misted Light Covers 118
Mode
Sport 244

N

Navigation
Guidance 190
Using the System 178
Navigation System Overview ... 177
New Vehicle Break-In 224
Notices for Customer-installed Equipment 64

O

Odometer 92
Trip 92
Oil
Engine 294
Pressure Light 99
Older Children, Restraints 65
Operation
Infotainment 156
Infotainment System 128
Other Service Items
Air Conditioning System 212
Outlets
Power 87
Outside Temperature 86
Overheating, Engine 297
Overrun Cut-Off 228

Overview 126, 154
Navigation System 177
Owner Assistance 349

P

Parking 231
Brake 239
Parking Assist 247
Advanced 252
Personalisation
Vehicle 108
Phone
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 148, 203
Bluetooth 145, 198
Hands-Free 149, 204
Power
Mirrors 41
Outlets 87
Protection, Battery 121
Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 228
Windows 44
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 59
Pressure
Tyre 346

R

Radios
AM-FM-DAB 169
AM-FM-DAB Radio 133
Reading Lamps 120
Rear Floor Storage Cover 73
Rear Fog Light 100
Rear Fog Lights 118
Rear Seats 54
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 245
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 85
Rear Windows
Heated 46
Rearview Mirrors 43
Automatic Dimming 43
Recognition
Voice 144, 194, 195
Recommended
Fuel 279
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 338
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 22, 23
Remote Vehicle Start 27
Replacement Parts
Airbags 64
Replacing Airbag System 64
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 60
Restraints
Where to Put 68
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 228
Reverse Lamps 118
Ride Control Systems 242
Electronic Stability (ESC) 242
Roof
Sunroof 46
Roof Rack System 77
Rotation, Tyres 321

S

Safety Locks 32
Seat Belts
Care 59
Child Restraints 69
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 57
Reminders 95
Replacing after a Crash 60
Three-Point 58
Use During Pregnancy 59

Seats
Adjustment, Front 51
Head Restraints 48
Heated Front 53
Position, Front 50
Rear 54
Service 221
Accessories and Modifications 287
Climate Control System 212
Service and Maintenance
Service Information 337
Service Display 94
Service Electric Parking Brake Light 97
Service Information 337
Settings 151, 208
Shift Lever 233
Side Airbag System 62
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) ... 274
Side Turn Signal Lights 310
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 118
Specifications and Capacities 346
Speed Limiter 258
Speedometer 91
Sport Mode 244
Start Assist, Hill 241
Start Vehicle, Remote 27
Starting and Operating
Overrun Cut-Off 228
Starting the Engine 226
Steering
Heated Wheel 82
Wheel Adjustment 81
Wheel Controls 81
Storage
Boot Cover 73
Vehicle 287
Storage Areas
Armrest 73
Cargo Cover 74
Front 72
Glove Box 71
Information on Loading the Vehicle 78
Rear Floor Storage Cover 73
Roof Rack System 77
Storage Compartments 71
Sun Visor Lamps 120
Sun Visors 46
Sunroof 46
Symbols 3
System
Following Distance Indication 270
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) 268
Roof Rack 77
Systems
Driver Assistance 244

T

Tachometer 93
Tailgate 33
Taillamps 304
Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 346
Temperature
Outside 86
Text Messaging 201
Theft-Deterrent Systems
Immobiliser 41
Thermometer
Outside Temperature 86
Three-Point Seat Belt 58
Time 86
Tools 319
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 69
Towing
Another Vehicle 332

Towing (cont'd)
Trailer 281
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ... 284
Vehicle 330
Traction
Control System (TCS) 241
Traction Control System
(TCS) Off Light 99
Trademarks and License
Agreements 348
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 284
Towing 281
Transmission
Automatic 233
Transmission Display 233
Tread Depth 321
Trip Odometer 92
Turn and Lane-Change
Signals 118
Turn Signal 95
Tyre Pressure 346
Tyres 320
Buying New Tyres 322
Chains 323
Changing 323
Pressure 320
Rotation 321
Tyres (cont'd)
Wheel Alignment and Tyre
Balance 322

U

USB 137, 172
Using the Navigation System ... 178
Using This Manual 3

V

Vehicle
Identification Number (VIN) ... 339
Messages 106
Personalisation 108
Remote Start 27
Towing 330
Towing Another Vehicle 332
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 98
Vehicle Care
Tyre Pressure 320
Vehicle Dimensions 345
Vehicle Identification
Labels 340
Vehicle Storage 287
Vehicle Weight 342
Ventilation
Adjustable Air 220
Fixed Air Vents 220
Visors 46
Voice Recognition 144, 194, 195

W

Warning
Brake System Light 97
Caution and Danger 3
Warning Chimes 107
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 117
Washer Fluid 299
Weights
Vehicle 342
Wheels
Alignment and Tyre
Balance 322
Where to Put the Restraint 68
Windows 43
Heated, Rear 46
Power 44
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 83
Wiper Blade Replacement 301
Wipers
Rear Washer 85